

Oxford Word Skills

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*



Oxford
3000



**SECOND
EDITION**

<https://danesh.land/>

Oxford **Word Skills**

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*



OXFORD

Contents

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| List of spotlight boxes | 6 |
| Acknowledgements | 7 |
| Introduction | 8 |

LEARNING

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| 1 Vocabulary learning | 12 |
| 2 Progress and aims | 14 |
| 3 Using an English dictionary | 16 |
| 4 English punctuation | 18 |

PEOPLE

| | |
|-------------------------------|----|
| 5 The body | 20 |
| 6 Appearance | 22 |
| 7 Character | 24 |
| 8 Feelings and emotions | 26 |
| 9 Personal qualities | 28 |
| 10 Friendship | 30 |
| 11 Families | 32 |
| 12 Marriage and divorce | 34 |

THE WORLD AROUND US

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----|
| 13 Geography | 36 |
| 14 The universe and science | 38 |
| 15 Weather conditions | 40 |
| 16 Climate change | 42 |
| 17 Saving the environment | 44 |
| 18 Animals, insects and birds | 46 |

LANGUAGE FOCUS adjectives and adverbs

| | |
|--|----|
| 19 Adjectives (1) | 48 |
| 20 Adjectives (2): opposites | 50 |
| 21 Adverbs (1): degree and frequency | 52 |
| 22 Adverbs (2): emphasizing and manner | 54 |

DAILY LIFE

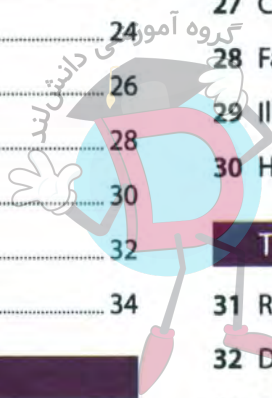
| | |
|--------------------------------------|----|
| 23 Fruit, vegetables and herbs | 56 |
| 24 Containers and quantities | 58 |
| 25 Cooking | 60 |
| 26 Shopping | 62 |
| 27 Clothing | 64 |
| 28 Fashion | 66 |
| 29 Illness and accidents | 68 |
| 30 Hospital | 70 |

TRANSPORT AND TRAVEL

| | |
|---------------------------|----|
| 31 Roads | 72 |
| 32 Driving | 74 |
| 33 Trains and buses | 76 |
| 34 Air travel | 78 |
| 35 Holidays | 80 |

LANGUAGE FOCUS prepositions

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| 36 Verb + preposition | 82 |
| 37 Noun + preposition | 84 |
| 38 Prepositions in time phrases | 85 |
| 39 Adjective + preposition | 86 |
| 40 Prepositional phrases | 88 |



DESCRIBING THINGS

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| 41 Describing objects | 90 |
| 42 Household tasks | 92 |
| 43 Buildings | 94 |
| 44 How to grow something | 96 |
| 45 Shapes and lines | 97 |
| 46 A painting | 98 |
| 47 The five senses | 100 |

SOCIAL AND POLITICAL ISSUES

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| 48 Crime | 102 |
| 49 The justice system | 104 |
| 50 Health issues | 106 |
| 51 Politics | 108 |
| 52 War and peace | 110 |
| 53 Events in history | 112 |
| 54 Social issues | 114 |

LANGUAGE FOCUS verbs

| | |
|--|-----|
| 55 Irregular verbs | 116 |
| 56 Verb + infinitive or <i>-ing</i> form | 118 |
| 57 Using verbs with reflexive pronouns | 120 |
| 58 <i>take</i> | 121 |

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT

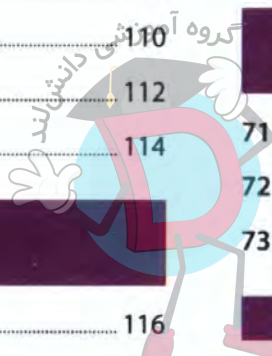
| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 59 Art | 122 |
| 60 Films | 124 |
| 61 Theatre | 125 |
| 62 Music | 126 |
| 63 TV and online viewing | 128 |
| 64 Newspapers | 130 |
| 65 Books | 132 |
| 66 Sporting events | 134 |
| 67 Sport: people and places | 136 |
| 68 Festivals | 138 |
| 69 The internet | 140 |
| 70 Email and social media | 142 |

LANGUAGE FOCUS word building

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| 71 Word building: prefixes | 144 |
| 72 Word building: suffixes | 146 |
| 73 Link words | 148 |

STUDY AND WORK

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| 74 School | 150 |
| 75 Academic life | 152 |
| 76 Student life | 154 |
| 77 Describing jobs | 156 |
| 78 Careers | 158 |
| 79 Applying for a job | 160 |
| 80 Finance | 162 |
| 81 Running a business | 164 |
| 82 Marketing | 166 |

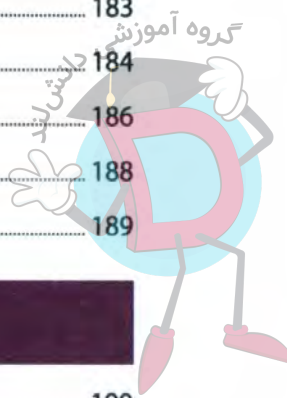


LANGUAGE FOCUS
phrasal verbs and idioms

| | |
|--|-----|
| 83 Phrasal verbs (1): grammatical patterns | 168 |
| 84 Phrasal verbs (2): meaning | 170 |
| 85 Expressions (1) | 172 |
| 86 Expressions (2) | 174 |

LANGUAGE FOCUS
social English

| | |
|--|-----|
| 87 Likes, dislikes and preferences | 176 |
| 88 Probability | 178 |
| 89 Similarities and differences | 179 |
| 90 Pleasure and annoyance | 180 |
| 91 Making arrangements | 182 |
| 92 Warnings | 183 |
| 93 Opinions | 184 |
| 94 Hopes and plans | 186 |
| 95 Obligation | 188 |
| 96 Asking for permission | 189 |



LANGUAGE FOCUS
styles of language

| | |
|--|-----|
| 97 Formal and informal English | 190 |
| 98 Write a letter or email | 192 |
| 99 Abbreviations and short forms | 194 |
| 100 American English | 196 |
| Vocabulary building | 198 |
| Common irregular verbs | 202 |
| Answer key | 205 |
| Word list | 237 |

Spotlight boxes

| Title | Unit | Page | Title | Unit | Page |
|--|------|------|---|------|------|
| <i>actually</i> | 94 | 186 | <i>keep</i> | 57 | 118 |
| adjective + preposition | 39 | 86 | <i>lady and gentleman</i> | 46 | 98 |
| adjectives ending in <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i> (1) | 20 | 51 | <i>live, alive, living</i> | 62 | 127 |
| adjectives ending in <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i> (2) | 72 | 14 | <i>long, wide, deep; length, width, depth</i> | 67 | 137 |
| adverbs of manner | 22 | 55 | <i>market</i> | 81 | 165 |
| <i>alone, on your own, lonely</i> | 8 | 26 | <i>mind</i> | 85 | 172 |
| <i>as ... as possible</i> | 50 | 107 | noun + noun | 41 | 91 |
| <i>at last</i> | 38 | 85 | <i>on earth</i> | 40 | 89 |
| <i>be used to (doing) sth and be accustomed to (doing) sth</i> | 76 | 154 | <i>outdoor(s)/indoor(s)</i> | 35 | 80 |
| <i>birth</i> | 11 | 33 | politics | 51 | 108 |
| <i>block</i> | 43 | 95 | the prefix <i>re-</i> with verbs | 71 | 145 |
| <i>can + sense verbs</i> | 47 | 100 | the prefixes <i>over-</i> and <i>under-</i> | 81 | 164 |
| <i>career, job, profession</i> | 78 | 158 | preposition + <i>-ing</i> form | 37 | 84 |
| <i>championship and tournament</i> | 66 | 134 | prepositions with <i>rise</i> and <i>fall</i> | 80 | 163 |
| <i>cheers</i> | 97 | 191 | <i>quite, fairly, rather, pretty</i> | 21 | 53 |
| <i>cinema</i> | 60 | 124 | reflexive verbs | 57 | 120 |
| <i>compare and comparison</i> | 89 | 179 | religion | 68 | 138 |
| <i>competition</i> | 66 | 134 | <i>repair, fix, mend</i> | 42 | 93 |
| <i>completely, absolutely, totally</i> | 21 | 52 | royal families | 53 | 112 |
| compound adjectives with <i>well</i> | 65 | 133 | separable phrasal verbs | 83 | 168 |
| compounds with <i>driving</i> | 32 | 75 | <i>separate</i> | 12 | 35 |
| <i>contain and include</i> | 2 | 15 | <i>shape and -shaped</i> | 45 | 97 |
| <i>conversation, discussion, argument</i> | 1 | 13 | <i>skill</i> | 82 | 166 |
| <i>crazy, mad, stupid</i> | 7 | 24 | <i>so/neither do/have/can, etc.</i> | 87 | 177 |
| degree courses | 75 | 152 | <i>social media</i> | 70 | 143 |
| <i>depth</i> | 67 | 137 | <i>sore and painful</i> | 29 | 68 |
| <i>diet</i> | 25 | 60 | <i>steal and rob</i> | 48 | 103 |
| different meanings | 84 | 170 | <i>still</i> | 73 | 149 |
| different uses of <i>bother</i> | 90 | 181 | <i>stress and emphasize</i> | 3 | 16 |
| <i>discover or invent?</i> | 14 | 39 | <i>stuff</i> | 41 | 90 |
| <i>disease and illness</i> | 50 | 106 | <i>take/send sth back</i> | 26 | 63 |
| <i>effect n and affect v</i> | 16 | 42 | the suffix <i>-er</i> and <i>player</i> | 67 | 136 |
| <i>employment</i> | 78 | 159 | the suffix <i>-ish</i> | 6 | 23 |
| <i>enough</i> | 30 | 70 | the suffix <i>-ist</i> | 62 | 126 |
| <i>evidence and proof</i> | 49 | 104 | the suffixes <i>-ed</i> and <i>-ing</i> | 19 | 49 |
| <i>expect</i> | 9 | 29 | <i>tin and can</i> | 24 | 58 |
| <i>experience and experienced</i> | 34 | 79 | transitive and intransitive verbs | 24 | 59 |
| <i>fashion and fashionable</i> | 28 | 66 | <i>TV</i> | 63 | 129 |
| <i>finance</i> | 80 | 162 | <i>ugly</i> | 6 | 22 |
| <i>formal language</i> | 79 | 160 | uncountable nouns | 42 | 92 |
| <i>further</i> | 98 | 192 | verb + noun | 52 | 111 |
| <i>get (= become)</i> | 8 | 27 | verb + preposition | 36 | 82 |
| getting dressed and wearing clothes | 27 | 64 | verbs that mean <i>continue</i> | 74 | 150 |
| giving opinions | 93 | 184 | <i>whenever, wherever, whatever</i> | 17 | 45 |
| <i>go away</i> | 85 | 173 | <i>whether (or not)</i> | 49 | 104 |
| gradable and ungradable adjectives | 19 | 48 | word order with <i>like, enjoy, etc.</i> | 87 | 176 |
| <i>hardware and software</i> | 69 | 140 | word stress | 71 | 144 |
| <i>journey, trip, travel</i> | 33 | 76 | <i>worth</i> | 26 | 62 |

Acknowledgements

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Elżbieta Rudniak (Poland)

Eva Paulerová (Czech Republic)

Florence Waeni (Kenya)

Franky Lau (China)

Hossein Sarempour (Iran)

Katalin Elekes (Hungary)

Mallika Ghosh (India)

Michael Finch (South Korea)

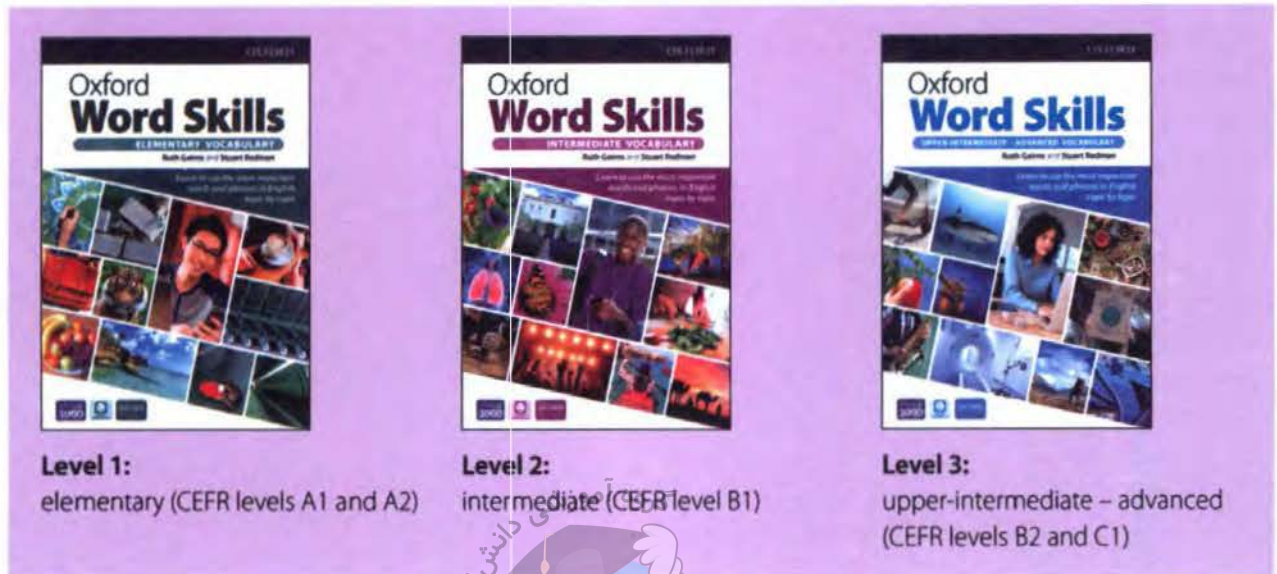
Susana Dichiera (Argentina)



Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.


The units are grouped within modules containing 3–12 units each. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. Feelings and emotions, Geography, Air travel, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositional phrases, Using verbs with reflexive pronouns, Phrasal verbs.

At the front of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes

At the back of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of vocabulary-building tables
- a list of common irregular verbs
- an Answer key for all the exercises
- a Word list of all the vocabulary taught with a reference to the units where each item appears and the CEFR level for words/phrases in the Oxford 3000™/5000™ or Oxford Phrase List™.

Oxford Word Skills comes with the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topic areas, e.g. People, The world around us, Study and work
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. Making arrangements, Warnings, Opinions
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. Verb + infinitive or *-ing* form, Prepositions in time phrases, Word building: prefixes


Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative usage of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000. This is a list of 3,000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level, and it also includes some B2 items.
- The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes C1 items from the Oxford 5000 word list (which includes both additional B2 items and C1 words). It is not within the scope of this series to teach C2 items, as these correspond more closely to lexical needs at proficiency level.

The Oxford 3000/5000 word lists are supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List, which contains just under 1,000 CEFR-levelled phrases considered important for students at each level. The Intermediate word list also draws on topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we have been able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *turnover* and *inflation* in finance, and *selfie* and *profile* in social media. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we have also been able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases for each level.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase in use. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*  for information on other meanings.

To the teacher

How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- **visuals**

1 You use a **hammer**¹ to **bang** a **nail**² into the wall to **hang** a picture on.

3 You use a **drill**³ to make a **hole**⁴. A hammer and drill are **tools**.

7 You use a **needle**⁵, **pins**⁶, **scissors**⁷ and **cotton**⁸ when you're **sewing**.

- **tables**

| Crime | Meaning | Verb | Criminal (= a person who commits a crime) |
|----------------|--|--|---|
| theft | taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission | <i>He steals cars then sells them.</i> | thief (pl thieves) |
| robbery | stealing from a person or place, often using violence | <i>Two men were planning to rob the bank.</i> | robber |

- **different types of text**

B Points of view

Yes, no or sometimes?

- I have the same **point of view** on things as my parents.
- I enjoy **expressing my opinion** online.
- I'm **against** freedom of speech in some cases.
- I'm **prepared to** admit when I **have no idea about** a particular **topic**.
- There are some subjects I have **fixed** ideas about, and I'm not **willing to** discuss.
- I sometimes **change my mind** when I'm

GLOSSARY

point of view the particular opinion or attitude that sb has about sth

express tell or show what you are thinking by words, looks or action: **express your opinions/feelings**

be against sth If you **are against sth**, you do not agree with it. **OPP be in favour (of sth)**

in some cases in some situations

prepared to do sth happy to do sth **SYN willing to do sth**

have no idea (about sth) inf used to emphasize that you do not know sth

topic a subject that you talk, write or learn about

Visuals provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary. As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value.

For example:

SPOTLIGHT **degree courses**

Universities give **degrees** to students who complete special courses. In the UK these are normally courses of at least three years, and up to five years for subjects such as medicine. You **do a degree** or **study for a degree**.

- I'm **doing a degree in law**.
- My sister is **studying for a degree in English**.

If you go on to do a higher degree, e.g. a Masters or a PhD, that is called a **postgraduate degree**. A student is then a **postgraduate** (ALSO *inf postgrad*).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the new vocabulary. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. The latter is probably a better approach, as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on or practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically, as they generally progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the **ABOUT YOU** / **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, assisting where necessary. You will find that many of the exercises, once done – e.g. sentence completion, and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- **TEST YOURSELF** When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a piece of paper, etc.) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- The headings **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** signal personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these exercises, but they also make ideal pairwork activities in which learners can practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the **APP**, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module on the subject of learning. They can check their answers to exercises using the Answer key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. They can also select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their vocabulary.

1 Vocabulary learning

A Help with reading

ADVICE FOR READING

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should first try to understand the **basic** meaning of the text. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again later to look at this. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record** of the words in a notebook, and if possible write down any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it followed by a particular preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| foreign | from a country that is not your own. A person from another country is a foreigner . |
| basic | most important and necessary |
| recognize | know what sth is or who sb is because you have seen or heard them before |
| go through sth | read sth carefully from beginning to end |
| identify | recognize and decide what sth is |
| guess | give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts have a guess <i>n</i> |
| context | the words before and after a new word/phrase that help you to understand the meaning |
| keep a record of sth | write sth down to help you remember it |
| formal | We use formal language to appear serious or official, or in some situations where we don't know people well. OPP informal |
| translation | text that has been changed from one language into another translate <i>v</i> |

1 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has a similar meaning.

- I understood the most important and necessary ideas. basic
- 1 We couldn't recognize and decide what language they were speaking.
- 2 I think he was using very serious and official language.
- 3 He's from another country.
- 4 You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word.
- 5 There was a text that I had to change from one language into another.
- 6 I replied without really knowing the answer.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is 'How do you do' formal? ~ Yes, we usually just say *hello*.
- 1 Did you understand the exercise the first time? ~ No, but we it again later.
- 2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the meaning.
- 3 Did you all the students in the photo? ~ No, I didn't know one or two of them.
- 4 Were there many in the group? ~ No, the people were all from this country.
- 5 Is there a difference between *hello* and *hi*? ~ Yeah, *hi* is more
- 6 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had a


3 Complete the sentences.

- When you read a text in English, do you usually go through it a second time? **ABOUT YOU**
- 1 Do you often try to guess the meaning of new words from the?
- 2 Do you keep a of new words in a notebook?
- 3 Do you write down the meaning in English, or do you write a?
- 4 Do you make a note of special information? For example, a note about the pronunciation, or whether a word is formal or?
- 5 Do you often a word without being able to remember the meaning?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.



B Help with speaking and listening


- In a **conversation** in English, ask people to **repeat** words you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning if necessary.
- Repetition** of new words using the  will help you to remember them, and how to **pronounce** them.
- One **function** of the app is to help you pronounce new words, and repetition of these words will help you to remember them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise new vocabulary. Don't be afraid to **experiment with** language, and don't worry about **making mistakes**.
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't just one correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| repeat | say sth again repetition <i>n</i> |
| explain | tell sb sth in a way that makes it clear or easy to understand explanation <i>n</i> |
| pronounce | make the sound of a word or letter pronunciation <i>n</i> |
| function | the purpose or job that sth is designed to do |
| opportunity | a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do SYN chance |
| experiment with sth | try sth to see what result it has |
| make mistakes | (NOT <i>do mistakes</i>) |
| revise | study sth again do revision <i>n</i> |
| method | a way of doing sth |
| work | get or have the result you want: <i>I tried speaking slowly but it didn't work.</i> |

SPOTLIGHT *conversation, discussion, argument*

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people.
 A **discussion about something** is when you talk about something seriously. **discuss** *v*.
 An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily. **argue** *v*

5 Write the noun forms, then underline the main stress on both verbs and nouns. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|---|---------|-------|
| ▶ discuss | <u>discussion</u> | 3 | explain | ..... |
| 1 repeat | ..... | 4 | revise | ..... |
| 2 pronounce | ..... | 5 | argue | ..... |

6 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ An argument is a conversation in which people agree / disagree.
- If you revise something, you say it again / study it again.
 - If something works, it is successful / difficult.
 - If you experiment with something, you try to do something / find something.
 - You can do / make a mistake.
 - We had a conversation / discussion about politics in class yesterday. It got quite serious.
 - A method is an opportunity to do something / a way of doing something.
 - If you explain something, you make it easy to say / understand.
 - If you make a mistake, you get something wrong / right.
 - One function / method of a dictionary is to help you with the meanings of words.

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We had a conversation on the phone last night.
- I never know how to the word **necessary**. Pronunciation is difficult.
 - My brother's got an to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
 - I have to do some for my exam tomorrow.
 - I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really You must try it.
 - Do you think we'll have a to revise before we take the test?
 - You won't know if you can use new words until you with them.
 - Does help you to remember new words?
 - I often have with my parents. We disagree about most things.

TEST YOURSELF

2 Progress and aims

A Making progress



Felipe from Argentina

When I started learning English, I was very **keen** and **motivated**, but I **found it difficult to** pronounce English words, and sometimes people couldn't understand me. **After a while** my pronunciation **got better**, and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **improving**, and that was very **encouraging**. But at intermediate level, my progress **slowed down**. There were so many new words and phrases I didn't know. I think I **was also more aware of** my mistakes, which was good – but also **frustrating**.

| GLOSSARY | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| keen | interested in sth and wanting to do it: <i>She's keen to learn.</i> |
| motivated | If you are motivated (to do sth) , you really want to do sth. motivation <i>n</i> |
| find it difficult to (do sth) | be difficult for sb (to do sth) |
| after a while | after a period of time |
| get better | become better SYN improve <i>v</i> , improvement <i>n</i> |
| express | say or show what you think or feel |
| effectively | in a way that gives you the result you want effective <i>adj</i> |
| obvious | easy to see and understand SYN clear ; obviously, clearly <i>adv</i> |
| encouraging | If sth/sb is encouraging , they give you hope and make you want to continue. encourage <i>v</i> |
| slow down | start to go more slowly |
| be aware of sth | If you are aware of sth , you know about it. |
| frustrating | making you angry because you cannot be successful at sth you want to do frustration <i>n</i> |

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ find / while 3 encourage / frustrating 5 better / obvious
 1 effective / difficult 4 slow down / motivate 6 aware / after

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals.

- ▶ It's frustrating when you can't understand. FRUSTRATION
 1 My dad was very ENCOURAGE
 2 I think my English is IMPROVEMENT
 3 He is keen to do well. OBVIOUS
 4 She did the work very EFFECTIVE
 5 He doesn't have much MOTIVATED
 6 She is very intelligent. CLEAR

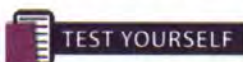
3 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the box.

- aware encouraging slowing down express effective
 keen getting better obviously ✓ difficult while

- ▶ Repeating words obviously helps me to remember them.
 1 I worried about my mistakes, but after a I stopped.
 2 At first I made good progress, but now I'm
 3 I'm not of making mistakes when I speak, but I'm sure I make lots.
 4 I think I can things better now than I could a year ago.
 5 I listen to songs in English. I think that's an way to learn.
 6 I find it very to concentrate when I'm learning English.
 7 I'm very to read books in English; it will be good for me.
 8 It's very when people tell me my English is

ABOUT YOU

4 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



B Future goals

What are your learning goals?

Felipe Ramirez

VOCABULARY I can understand most native speakers of English, but my vocabulary needs to expand so that I can understand a wide range of subjects, and express more complex ideas.

SPEAKING I'd like to be more fluent when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things in more detail. And I need to get better at using language that is suitable for the situation.

READING I can understand general things, but to achieve my aims I need to be able to read texts that are to do with my work, and some of these contain quite difficult language.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| goal | sth you want to be able to do in the future SYN aim |
| native speaker | sb who speaks a language as their first language and has not learnt it as a foreign language. A native is a person who was born in a particular place: a native of New York |
| expand | become bigger or make sth bigger |
| a (wide) range (of sth) | a (large) number of different things |
| complex | having a lot of details that make sth difficult to understand |
| fluent | able to speak easily and well fluently adv |
| in detail | fully and including a lot of information |
| suitable | right for sth or sb OPP unsuitable |
| achieve | do or finish sth well after trying hard achievement n |
| be to do with sth/sb | be connected with sth/sb |

SPOTLIGHT *contain and include*

Contain and include can have the same meaning.

- The dictionary **contains/includes** lots of important information. Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.
- The box **contains** books. (= There are books **inside** the box.)
- The price of the book **includes** the app. (= The app is **one part of** the price.)

5 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or words with a similar meaning.

Be careful with tenses.

▶ It was a success and he did well.

1 I speak Russian very well.

2 The text contains lots of new words.

3 It isn't connected to my work.

4 The story is difficult to understand.

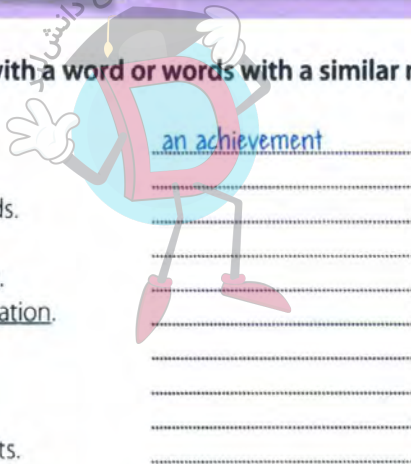
5 He described it with lots of information.

6 That word isn't really right here.

7 My goal is to get to university.

8 The business got bigger.

9 He studies a lot of different subjects.



6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

▶ Did you explain it fully?

~ Yes, I described it in detail.

1 Are you planning to study English at university?

~ Yes, that's my

2 It wasn't the right thing to say.

~ No, I agree, it was

3 Is your English teacher from Spain?

~ No, she's British. She's a speaker of English.

4 Was that English book useful?

~ Yes, it lots of new words.

5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger?

~ Yes, it's definitely

6 Is the English course expensive?

~ Yes, but the price all the books you need.

7 Can you do English at an evening college?

~ Yes, there's a wide of courses.

8 Has she done well?

~ Yes, she has everything she wanted to do.

9 Is English important for Joe?

~ Yes, it's to with his job. He needs to speak English.

10 Does Marta speak English well now?

~ Yes, she's a very speaker.

7 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

3 Using an English dictionary

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from the *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Definitions are in simple English.
Different meanings of a word are given.

Examples are provided to show how the word is used.

The dictionary can help you to avoid making mistakes, and gives help with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the entry.

Phonetic symbols help with pronunciation.
You can find out which syllable is stressed.

win /wɪn/ verb (**winning**; pt, pp **won** /wɒn/) **1** [I,T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc: *to win a game/match/championship* • *I never win at table tennis.* • *Which party do you think will win the next election?* **2** [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc: *We won a trip to Australia.* • *Who won the gold medal?* • *He won the jackpot in the lottery.*

HELP Note that we **earn** (not **win**) money at our job: *I earn £25 000 a year.*

IDM **you can't win** (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: *Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.*

win/lose the toss **↻** toss

PHR V **win sb over/round (to sth)** to persuade sb to support or agree with you: *They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.*

mistake¹ /mɪ'steɪk/ noun [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: *Try not to **make any mistakes** in your essays.* • *a spelling mistake* • *It was a big mistake to trust her.* • *I made the mistake of giving him my address.*

IDM **by mistake** as a result of being careless: *The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.*

OTHER WORDS FOR

mistake

Error is more formal than **mistake**: *a computing error*. When you **make a mistake** you do sth wrong: *I got the answer wrong.* • *You must have the wrong number (= on the phone).* Fault indicates who is responsible for sth bad: *The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me.* Fault is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: *a technical fault.*

Words that are often used together are given in bold.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and choose the correct word for your needs.

It helps you with style: for instance, formal, informal, slang, etc.

guy /gʌɪ/ noun **1** [C] (informal) a man or a boy: *He's a nice guy.* **2** **guys** [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of people of either sex: *What do you guys want to eat tonight?*

SPOTLIGHT *stress and emphasize*

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are **stress (on sth)** and **emphasis (on sth)**.

- Don't **emphasize** every word. The **stress** is **on** the first syllable.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|--|
| definition | an exact statement of what a word or phrase means define v | syllable | a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. Go has one syllable , and <i>prefer</i> has two. |
| provide | give sth to sb or make sth available for sb | related (to sth) | connected to sth |
| avoid doing sth | If you avoid doing sth, you try not to do it. | build | make sth bigger; increase sth |
| idiom | a group of words with a special meaning | style | the way sth is written or spoken, e.g. <i>informal, formal</i> |
| entry | one item that is written in a dictionary, list, etc. There are three dictionary entries on this page. | for instance | SYN for example |
| symbol | a letter, number or sign that has a particular meaning, e.g. /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh'. | slang | very informal words or phrases used in spoken language |

1 Complete the words.

- ▶ d e f i n e
- 1 s _ _ m b _ _ l
- 2 st _ _ l _ _
- 3 sl _ _ _ _ _
- 4 em _ _ _ _ size

- 5 id _ _ _ _ _
- 6 s _ _ ll _ _ bl _ _
- 7 em _ _ _ _ asi _ _
- 8 f _ _ r _ _ _ _ st _ _ _ _ ce
- 9 d _ _ f _ _ n _ _ t _ _ _ n

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ Does he use a lot of slang? / Does he use a lot of idioms? D
- 1 It's possible to increase your vocabulary. / It's possible to build your vocabulary.
- 2 Is that symbol correct? / Is that definition correct?
- 3 It gives words that are connected. / It gives words that are related.
- 4 The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc. /
The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc.
- 5 Can you avoid mistakes? / Can you define mistakes?
- 6 Is that formal? / Is that slang?
- 7 They always stress that syllable. / They always emphasize that syllable.
- 8 It doesn't give all the answers. / It doesn't provide all the answers.

3 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|---------|-------------|----------|--------|
| symbols | avoid | related | entry ✓ | definitions | syllable | define |
| instance | stress | idiom | provide | build | entry | |

- ▶ In a dictionary, *foreigner* comes after the entry for *foreign*.
- 1 Dictionaries have many uses: for to find out the meaning, check pronunciation, etc.
- 2 This dictionary has clear which are easy to understand.
- 3 Some dictionaries can help you your vocabulary if they synonyms and opposites, or other words.
- 4 A dictionary gives you grammar information so that you can making mistakes.
- 5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic and noticing which is stressed.
- 6 *Good luck!* is given as an in the dictionary, at the end of the for *luck*.
- 7 Dictionaries for foreign learners words in simple English.
- 8 In the word *emphasize*, the is on the first syllable.

4 Look at the dictionary entries on page 16. Answer the questions.

- ▶ Which syllable is stressed in *mistake*? The second syllable.
- 1 Which related words are given for *mistake*?
- 2 How many definitions are there in the entry for *win*?
- 3 What style is the idiom *You can't win*?
- 4 Is *guy* a slang word?
- 5 Which phonetic symbols are given for *guy*?
- 6 What's the second definition of *guy*?

5 Are these sentences correct? Write Yes or No. Use the dictionary entries to correct any wrong answers.

- 1 a She turned left by a mistake.
- b I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them.
- 2 a We're hoping to win a medal for skiing in the Olympics.
- b My dad wins a lot of money in his job.
- 3 a There are a couple of guys at the door. Who are they?
- b I like Amelie: she's a funny guy.



4 English punctuation



1 full stop



2 comma



3 colon



4 semicolon



5 apostrophe



6 question mark



7 slash



8 brackets



9 dash



10 exclamation mark



11 hyphen



12 quotation marks

Some important punctuation rules

A **full stop** is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A **comma** in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- often between adjectives, e.g. *He bought a powerful, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is usually **omitted** before *and*, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal order of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A **colon** is often used to introduce **further details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors and so on.*

A **semicolon** is sometimes used in formal writing **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**. It is also used to separate two main clauses, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.* These are often clauses not **joined** by a link word **such as** *and* or *but*.

Apostrophes show where we have **left letters out** of a word, e.g. *I'm* = I am; *don't* = do not; *I'd* = I would OR I had. They are also used to show that something belongs to somebody or something, e.g. *Mark's car* = the car belonging to Mark; *the children's room*.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| abbreviation | a short form of a word: <i>TV is an abbreviation for television.</i> | interrupt | stop sth or sb so that it or they cannot continue |
| capital letter | A B C are capital letters ; a b c are small letters. | further | more, extra: <i>Do you have any further questions?</i> |
| pause | a short period of time when sb stops talking | details | small pieces of information about sth |
| separate | keep people or things away from each other | instead of sb/sth | in the place of sb/sth |
| list | a series of names, items, or numbers: <i>a shopping list, a list of countries</i> | connect | put two or more things together SYN join |
| omit formal | If you omit sth, you don't include it. SYN leave sth out | such as | You use such as to introduce an example. SYN like |

1 Complete the words.

▶ com m a

1 full s _____

2 col _____

3 hyp _____

4 bra _____

5 semi- _____

6 excla _____ m _____

7 apo _____

2 What punctuation is used in 1-8 below? You don't need to repeat full stop each time.

▶ We went home early. full stop

1 She had beautiful, long hair. _____

2 What are you doing? _____

3 Congratulations! _____

4 It's too late. _____

5 Breakfast was incredible: fruit, eggs, toast and cheese! _____

6 Someone (not me) left the door open. _____

7 It was only a five-minute walk - he still took a taxi. _____

8 'It's only me,' he said. _____

3 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ connect

1 details

2 instead

3 apostrophe

4 omit

5 interrupt

6 separate

7 connect

8 shopping list

9 question mark

10 abbreviation

11 exclamation

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ An **abbreviation** is a short form of a word.

1 A **pause** is a short period of time when somebody stops _____

2 If you give **details** of something, you give more _____

3 **Omit** and **leave out** have a similar meaning, but **omit** is more _____

4 **Like** and **such as** can both be used to introduce an _____

5 If you **interrupt** a conversation, you _____ it.

6 If you **connect** something, you put two or more things _____

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.

1 I wrote a _____ of irregular verbs in my notebook.

2 I would use this dictionary _____ of the other one; it's much better.

3 We often use **and** or **but** to _____ two parts of a sentence.

4 In this application form, you have to give _____ of your work experience.

5 **Prep.** is an _____ for **preposition**.

6 You need to use more adjectives _____ as **beautiful** and **attractive**.

7 The teacher said we can _____ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.

8 You can use brackets to _____ information from the rest of the sentence.

9 The director had to _____ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.

10 I always write a _____ list when I buy food.

6 What punctuation is missing, and where?

▶ We live there. A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.

1 she works in Bristol. _____

2 He's a tall thin boy. _____

3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct? _____

4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them. _____

5 This is my boyfriends watch. _____

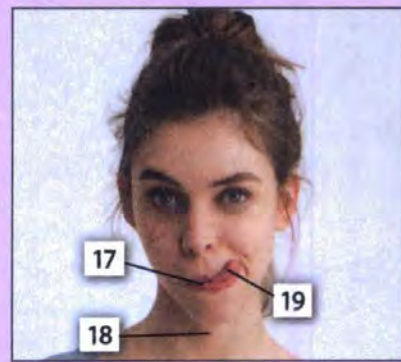
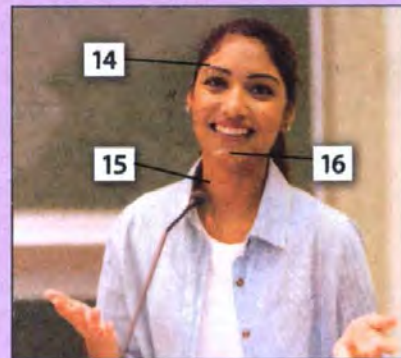
6 After that fortunately we had no more problems. _____



5 The body

A Parts of the body

- 1 shoulder
- 2 chest
- 3 elbow
- 4 stomach
- 5 waist
- 6 wrist
- 7 hip
- 8 thumb
- 9 fingernail
- 10 knee
- 11 toe
- 12 heel
- 13 ankle
- 14 eyebrow
- 15 neck
- 16 chin
- 17 lip
- 18 throat (inside)
- 19 tongue



1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------|---|-------|---|-------|
| ▶ waist / <u>n</u> ail | S | 3 sh <u>o</u> ulder / thro <u>u</u> t | ..... | 6 <u>w</u> aist / <u>w</u> rist | ..... |
| 1 el <u>b</u> ow / ey <u>b</u> row | ..... | 4 sto <u>m</u> ach / <u>c</u> hest | ..... | 7 sto <u>m</u> ach / <u>t</u> h <u>u</u> mb | ..... |
| 2 el <u>b</u> ow / <u>t</u> oe | ..... | 5 <u>t</u> h <u>u</u> mb / <u>t</u> ongue | ..... |  |  |

2 Complete the words.

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| ▶ thr <u>o</u> <u>a</u> <u>t</u> | 3 t _ _ _ g _ _ _ | 6 ey _ _ _ _ _ w |
| 1 kn _ _ _ | 4 h _ _ _ s | 7 sh _ _ _ _ _ d _ _ _ |
| 2 l _ _ p _ _ | 5 f _ _ _ g _ _ _ n _ _ _ l | |

3 What's the answer?

- ▶ Your mouth has two of these. lips.....
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 You have one of these at the end of each finger. | 6 It connects your head to your body. |
| 2 You have five of these at the end of each foot. | 7 It connects your leg to your foot. |
| 3 You have four fingers, plus one of these on each hand. | 8 It's at the back of your foot. |
| 4 You often wear a watch on this. | 9 It's where men can grow a beard. |
| 5 You can see this if you open your mouth. | 10 You can rest your arms on a table on these. |
| | 11 Food goes down through here when you eat. |
| | 12 And then food goes into here. |



B Using the body



wave



pour



kick



kiss



fold



sweep pt/pp swept



breathe



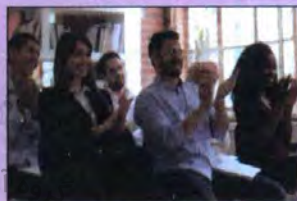
bite pt bit pp bitten



balance



roll



clap



bend pt/pp bent

4 Do you do these things with your mouth or your hands?

- ▶ breathe mouth.....
- 1 roll
- 2 kiss
- 3 fold
- 4 wave

- 5 pour
- 6 bite
- 7 sweep
- 8 clap

5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- ▶ roll e.....
 - 1 bend
 - 2 wave
 - 3 kiss
 - 4 bite
 - 5 fold
 - 6 clap
- a to a friend
 - b into an apple
 - c your hands together
 - d clothes
 - e a ball ✓
 - f your boyfriend/girlfriend
 - g your knee

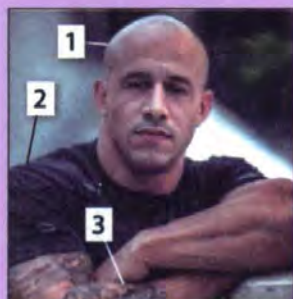
6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I waved..... to them from the balcony, but they didn't see me.
- 1 You have to the piece of paper, then put it in the envelope.
- 2 She boiling water into the coffee pot.
- 3 After my accident, I couldn't my arm for three weeks.
- 4 When I brush my teeth, I try to on one leg at the same time – it's not easy.
- 5 The suitcase had wheels, so luckily I was able to it through the airport.
- 6 The talk was so good that at the end everyone stood up and
- 7 My yoga teacher told us to very slowly and deeply to help us relax.
- 8 I the floor every day.
- 9 The dog me when I tried to take its food away. It was very painful.
- 10 The passenger in the seat behind me kept my seat. I had to ask him to stop.

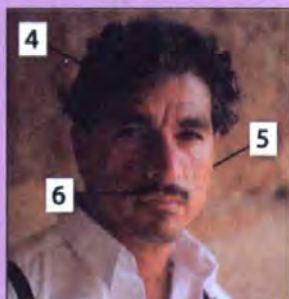
TEST YOURSELF

6 Appearance

A Male appearance



1 He's **bald**¹, with **broad shoulders**² and **tattoos**³. His general **appearance** is quite **ugly**.



2 Jed's got **wavy**⁴ hair, **dark skin**⁵ and a **moustache**⁶.



3 Sam's got **curly**⁷ hair, is in **good shape**, and always has a great **tan** in summer.



4 Brad's got **fair hair**⁸ and a **beard**⁹ with moustache. He's **medium build**.

SPOTLIGHT **ugly**

Ugly is the opposite of **beautiful**, but it's not polite to say somebody is **ugly**. It is better to say **unattractive** or **not very attractive**.

GLOSSARY

male Men and boys are **male**. Women and girls are **female**. (A person's *gender/sex* can be **male** or **female**.) We also use **male** and **female** to talk about animals.

broad appearance large from side to side: **broad shoulders** (NOT *wide shoulders*)
the way that sb or sth looks or seems appear v

dark skin OPP **pale/fair skin**

in good/bad shape (sun)tan in good/bad physical condition
When you have a **(sun)tan**, your skin is brown from the sun.

medium build not big or small, not fat or thin ALSO **of medium build**

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ wavy hair / curly hair
- 1 a moustache / a beard
- 2 in good shape / in good condition
- 3 bald / no hair
- 4 fat / medium build
- 5 narrow shoulders / broad shoulders

D

- 6 dark hair / fair hair
- 7 a tan / a suntan
- 8 pale skin / fair skin
- 9 ugly / unattractive
- 10 male / female

2 Complete the words in these questions.

- ▶ Who has got **dark**..... **skin**.....?
- 1 Who has got f..... h.....?
- 2 Has anyone got a tat.....?
- 3 Who has got a b..... or m.....?

- 4 Who is in good s.....?
- 5 Who has got b..... shoulders?
- 6 Are any men b..... or nearly b.....?
- 7 Who is medium b.....?

3 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Is that elephant male or **female**.....?
- 1 Is your hair straight, wavy or.....?
- 2 Have you got dark skin or..... skin?
- 3 Have you got broad.....?
- 4 Do you think you're in good.....?
- 5 Do you normally have a good..... in the summer?
- 6 Are you generally happy with your.....?

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 about family or friends, and to Exercise 3 about yourself, or ask another student.



B Female appearance



1 This is my mother at 27 when she **was pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She's **medium height**, and she had long wavy hair **at the time**, and lovely **smooth** skin.



2 Here's mum now. Her appearance hasn't changed that much. She still has a good **figure**, though she has more of a **roundish** face, and a different **hairstyle**: shorter, straighter and very **neat**. She wears **contact lenses** now, and you certainly can't **tell** that she's nearly 60.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| be pregnant | If a woman is pregnant , she has a baby growing in her body. SYN be expecting (a baby) |
| medium height | not tall or short ALSO of medium height |
| at the time | then; at a time in the past |
| smooth | with a completely flat surface OPP rough |
| figure | the shape of the body, especially that of a woman |
| hairstyle | the way your hair is cut and arranged |
| neat | tidy and carefully arranged |
| contact lenses | small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better |
| tell | know or guess |

SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-ish*

The suffix *-ish* is used informally with some adjectives meaning 'quite'.

- a **roundish** face = a face which is quite round **ALSO tallish, youngish**, etc.

5 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ Medium height is not tall or short.

1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses.

2 Skin can be rough or smooth.

3 A tallish person is very tall.

4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby.

5 Neat and tidy are similar in meaning.

6 If you have a good figure, your face is attractive.

7 If you're pregnant, it means you're expecting a baby.

8 Hairstyle is the same as hairdresser.

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ Does she wear contact lenses

1 My younger sister is medium, and her hair is short and very

2 She's still very slim, so you can't she's a baby in July.

3 I wouldn't say my aunt is very tall, but she's - more than medium height.

4 My baby's skin is so, but my hands are really

5 My best friend eats a huge amount, but she still has a great - it's so annoying!

6 You can she's been on holiday - she's got a lovely suntan.

7 My sister is always changing her : one week it's straight, the next week it's wavy.

8 We moved to this house in 2020: I was eight months at the, so it was quite difficult for me.

7 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

▶ Who is always very neat and tidy? My wife

1 When was the last time somebody was pregnant?

2 Who is of medium height?

3 Who often changes their hairstyle?

4 Who is shortish?

5 Who has got a roundish face?

6 Who wears contact lenses?

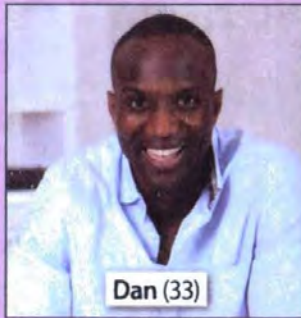


TEST YOURSELF

7 Character

HOW I SEE MYSELF

My character? I'm **ambitious** and **outgoing**, and I think I'm **generous**.



Dan (33)

I see myself as **practical**, **organized** and very **hard-working**.



Gina (45)

I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.



Kaz (18)

HOW OTHERS SEE ME

Some people really like me, and like the fact I'm so **confident**. Others say I'm not very **patient**.

Other people probably think I'm very **sensible**, quite **shy** and maybe a bit **dull**.

My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**. My friends just think I'm **crazy**.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|---|
| see sb as sth | imagine or think of sb in a particular way | organized | good at planning and arranging things OPP disorganized |
| character | the qualities that make sb different from other people SYN personality | hard-working | able to work with effort and for a long time OPP lazy |
| ambitious | An ambitious person wants to be successful, to have power, etc. ambition n | sensible | able to think carefully about sth and do the right thing OPP stupid |
| outgoing | friendly and interested in other people and new experiences | shy | not able to talk easily to people you do not know |
| generous | always ready to give people things or to spend money OPP mean | dull | not interesting or exciting; a bit boring |
| confident | feeling sure about your own ability OPP insecure | cheerful | feeling happy |
| patient | able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb OPP impatient ; patience n | easy-going | relaxed and not worried by what others do |
| practical | making sensible decisions and good at dealing with problems OPP impractical | energy | the ability to be very active without getting tired energetic adj |
| | | responsible | able to act sensibly and intelligently OPP irresponsible |

SPOTLIGHT *crazy, mad, stupid*

Crazy inf and **mad inf** mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

1 Positive or negative, or possibly both? Write P, N or B.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| ▶ She's very cheerful. <u>P</u> | ▶ He's very ambitious. <u>B</u> |
| 1 He's very organized. | 5 He can be quite mean. |
| 2 They're a bit dull. | 6 He's very confident. |
| 3 He is very easy-going. | 7 My brother is mad, but I love him. |
| 4 She's extremely practical. | 8 Karen is so patient. |

2 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| ▶ <u>cheerful</u> | 2 responsible | 4 easy-going | 6 disorganized |
| 1 energetic | 3 generous | 5 confident | 7 personality |

3 Match 1-8 with a-i.

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| ▶ feeling sure about your own ability <u>c</u> | a organized |
| 1 boring | b cheerful |
| 2 relaxed and not worried by others | c confident ✓ |
| 3 friendly and interested in others | d patient |
| 4 good at planning and arranging | e energetic |
| 5 able to stay calm and wait for things | f dull |
| 6 feeling happy | g outgoing |
| 7 not interested in giving money or helping people | h easy-going |
| 8 active without getting tired | i mean |

4 Complete the table.

| ADJECTIVE | OPPOSITE | ADJECTIVE | OPPOSITE |
|-------------|------------------|-----------|----------|
| ▶ patient | <u>impatient</u> | confident | ..... |
| responsible | ..... | sensible | ..... |
| lazy | ..... | organized | ..... |
| generous | ..... | practical | ..... |

5 Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ Marcel never does any work – he's so lazy
- 1 My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some c..... things, but he's fun.
- 2 Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very e.....-g.....
- 3 Zoltan is a great person to work with: he's very p..... and o.....
- 4 Marco is very g.....: he's always the first person to buy you a drink.
- 5 Since Katy went to university and got a boyfriend, she's become more c.....
- 6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very h.....-w.....
- 7 I don't think young Aaron is r..... enough to drive a car.
- 8 Andrea has so much e..... – she's always doing something.
- 9 My sister is the s..... member of the family – thinks carefully and never does anything s.....
- 10 My cousin Sylvia has an interesting c..... . Sometimes she is quite s..... and insecure, but at other times you realize she is very a..... and wants to do well and be successful.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- Are you ambitious? If so, in what way?
- Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy?
- Are you outgoing or quite shy?
- When are you impatient?
- Are you very organized? If so, in what way?
- Are you usually cheerful? Why/why not?
- How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives.
- Which two qualities are the most important for you: ambition, patience, energy or generosity?



8 Feelings and emotions

A Feelings

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|---------------------|--|--|
| anxious | He was anxious before he went into hospital. | worried and afraid |
| calm | My boss keeps calm in any situation. | quiet and not excited or afraid |
| delighted | My parents were delighted when I told them I was getting married. | very pleased or happy |
| disappointed | Jess was very disappointed when she failed the exam. | sad because what you wanted did not happen |
| embarrassed | I sometimes feel a bit embarrassed when I make stupid mistakes in English. | shy, worried or uncomfortable about what other people think of you |
| frightened | I was frightened when the plane took off. | SYNS afraid, scared |
| furious | Dad was furious when I lost his key. | very angry |
| miserable | You look miserable . What's wrong? | unhappy and depressed SYN fed up inf |
| pleased | I was pleased everyone enjoyed the party. | happy about a particular situation SYN glad |
| relaxed | I usually feel relaxed after a holiday. | calm and not worried |
| upset | Sarah was upset because no one spoke to her on the first day of the course. | sad and angry because of sth that has happened |

SPOTLIGHT *alone, on your own, lonely*

If you are **alone** or **on your own**, you are not with other people. If you are **lonely**, you are unhappy because you are not with other people.

- Why are you sitting here **on your own**? Where are the others?
- Sarah was **upset** because nobody spoke to her. She felt very **lonely**.

1 Positive or negative feelings? Write P or N.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ frightened <u>N</u> | 4 embarrassed | 8 disappointed |
| 1 anxious | 5 lonely | 9 upset |
| 2 furious | 6 delighted | 10 pleased |
| 3 relaxed | 7 calm | 11 miserable |

2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ▶ quiet and not excited <u>calm</u> | 4 on your own |
| 1 worried | 5 on your own and unhappy |
| 2 fed up | 6 calm and not worried |
| 3 scared | 7 very angry |

3 ABOUT YOU How would you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| ▶ Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. | I'd be <u>furious</u> |
| 1 You've just passed an important exam. | I'd be about it. |
| 2 Your boyfriend/girlfriend is away and hasn't phoned or texted you. | I'd be |
| 3 Your lovely old dog has just died. | I'd be |
| 4 A man walks up to you in the street and puts a knife in front of your face. | I'd be |
| 5 You're on holiday, but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold. | I'd be |
| 6 It's Friday evening and you have a free weekend ahead of you. | I'd be |
| 7 You thought it would rain, but it was sunny for your lunch in the garden. | I'd be |
| 8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying. | I'd be |
| 9 You didn't get a job you wanted. | I'd be |



TEST YOURSELF

B How emotional are you?

YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

Are you like this?

- | | |
|---|--------|
| a) I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings . | Yes/No |
| b) I don't often get stressed . | Yes/No |
| c) I feel guilty if I upset people. | Yes/No |
| d) I think I get jealous quite easily. | Yes/No |
| e) I get annoyed when people get things wrong . | Yes/No |
| f) I get nervous before big occasions . | Yes/No |
| g) My mood doesn't change much. | Yes/No |

GLOSSARY

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| emotional | having strong feelings, and often showing them emotion <i>n</i> |
| show your feelings | express what you feel openly OPP hide your feelings |
| stressed | feeling worried because of problems in your life |
| guilty | If you feel guilty , you feel bad and sorry that you have done sth that you know is wrong. |
| upset | make sb unhappy or angry upset <i>adj</i> |
| jealous | 1 angry or sad because you are afraid of losing sb's love 2 angry or sad because you want what another person has |
| annoyed | a little angry |
| get sth wrong | make a mistake |
| nervous | worried or afraid, often in a particular event or situation |
| occasion | a special event, ceremony, etc, e.g. a race, a wedding |
| mood | the way you feel at a particular time: be in a good/bad mood |

SPOTLIGHT **get**

In the structure **get + adjective**, **get** means 'become'.

- I **get** annoyed/stressed/jealous, etc.
- I **get** angry/upset when people don't listen to me.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you're *in a bad mood*, you're not happy.
- 1 If you *hide your feelings*, people can see you're very emotional.
- 2 If you do something wrong to somebody else, you may feel *guilty* about it.
- 3 If you're in a good mood, you're *annoyed*.
- 4 If you're *nervous*, you're feeling a bit worried or afraid.
- 5 If you're *jealous* of another person, it's because you like them.
- 6 If you're very *emotional*, you might shout or cry.
- 7 If you're *stressed*, you feel excited about something.
- 8 A big *occasion* is when something important happens.

T

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

- ▶ I get a bit nervous if I have to speak in front of a lot of people.
- 1 I feel very if I eat a whole bar of chocolate at once.
- 2 I'm feeling at the moment because I have a lot of exams.
- 3 I sometimes my parents when I don't tell them what I'm doing or I don't spend time with them. They can get quite with me.
- 4 The day you get married is a very big in your life.
- 5 I'm often in a bad if I haven't slept very well the night before.
- 6 I don't show my in front of my parents.
- 7 I get a bit if my friends have a lot more money than me.
- 8 I get very when I have to say goodbye to friends who I won't see for a long time.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Then look at Exercise 5 again. Are the sentences true for you? Do you agree with them?



TEST YOURSELF

9 Personal qualities

A Positive

My cousin Zara is **incredibly talented**: she's a gymnastics **champion**, and is **currently** the best runner in the country in her age group.



I think my brother Luke is so **brave**. He lost a leg in a motorbike accident five years ago, but now runs marathons to **raise money** for **charity**. I'm very **proud** of him.



My gran has many great **qualities**: she's one of the **kindest**, **gentlest**, and most **loving** people I've ever met. She never has a bad word to say about anyone and is always there to help you if you need it.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| incredibly | extremely |
| talented | having a natural ability to do sth well talent <i>n</i> |
| champion | the person who is the best at a sport or game |
| currently | now; at the moment current <i>adj</i> |
| brave | ready to do dangerous or difficult things without fear |
| raise money | get money from other people for a special purpose |
| charity | an organization that collects money to help people who need it |
| proud (of sb) | pleased about sth you or others have done |
| quality | a thing that is part of sb's character, especially sth good |
| kind | friendly and good to other people unkind |
| gentle | quiet and kind |
| loving | feeling or showing love and care |

1 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- Gentle people are quiet and kind.
- You raise money for other people because they it.
 - A father is kind and caring.
 - You feel proud if you've done something
 - If you are a champion, you are the
 - Brave people are prepared to do things.
 - Charities usually collect to help other people.
 - If something is currently true, it's true at the
 - A talent is a natural
 - If something is incredibly easy, it is easy.
 - If you're unkind, you aren't to people.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Amelia is wonderful with her children.
- Does she have a natural ability? ~ Yes, she's a very loving mother.
 - Is Carlos good at tennis? ~ Yes, she's very
 - Does Shelter collect money for homeless people? ~ Yes, he's the national for 16-year-olds.
 - Has your father helped you? ~ Yes, it's a national
 - Your sister has been very kind. ~ Yes, he's been helpful.
 - Does the charity need more money? ~ Yes, it's one of her best
 - Are there many students in the school? ~ Yes, they need to another £50,000.
 - Tom seems to have no fear at all. ~ Yes, there are about 400, and more each year.
 - It's amazing what Zoe has achieved already. ~ No, he's very
 - ~ I know, we're all very of her.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- Do you have a natural talent for something? If so, what is it? I think I have a talent for writing.
- Have you ever been a champion at anything?
 - Have you ever raised money for anything? If so, what?
 - Think of something you are proud of.
 - Would you describe yourself as gentle?
 - What's one of your best qualities?



TEST YOURSELF

B Negative



When anyone asks my colleague Otto for help, he always **pretends** to be busy and **makes up** an excuse for not having enough time. It's very **annoying** because it's part of his job to help us.

My boss can be very **difficult** as well. She has very **high standards**, which is good, but sometimes she **expects** too much of other people, and she can be a bit **cruel**.

My brother can be quite **unpleasant**. He doesn't **mean** to be, but he just sounds rather angry a lot of the time. People think he's a bit **odd**.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| pretend | try to make sb believe sth that is not true |
| make sth up | tell sb sth that is not true SYN invent |
| excuse | a reason you give to explain why you have done sth wrong, or not done sth you should have done |
| annoying | making you a little angry |
| difficult | A person who is difficult is not easy to please, or will not do what you want. |
| high standards | wanting people to reach a high level of quality and ability |
| cruel | very unkind cruelty n |
| unpleasant | unfriendly and not nice OPP pleasant |
| mean (to do sth) | intend (to do sth) |
| odd | strange or unusual |

SPOTLIGHT *expect*

In the text above, **expect** means 'demand that somebody does something because it is their job or responsibility'.

■ *She **expects** a lot of people who work for her.*

It can also mean 'think that something will happen or that somebody will come'.

■ *I **expect** my mother will be here soon.*

4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ annoying

1 pretend

3 difficult

5 expect

7 pleasant

2 excuse

4 standard

6 cruel

8 unpleasant

5 Yes or No?

▶ He's a difficult person. Do you think he'll do what you want?

No

1 He pretended to be asleep. Was he?

2 He made it up. Was it true?

3 He meant to do it. Did he intend to do it?

4 He was pleasant. Was he nice?

5 He was annoying. Were you angry?

6 He's cruel. Is he kind?

7 You expect something to happen. Do you think it will?

8 He just made up an excuse. Was he telling the truth?

9 He has high standards. Is he easy to please?

10 She's odd. Is she normal?

6 Complete the texts.

▶ The animals are locked up 24 hours a day. I think that's very cruel.

1 Petra is late for class most days, but always has a different I think she's got a few problems at the moment. She to be OK, but in actual fact, she isn't.

2 When students are late for class they are sometimes honest, but often they an excuse about the buses not being on time, or that the traffic was terrible.

3 I can't keep the flat as clean and tidy as my flatmate, but that's because she has very high and I don't. She puts my things away where I can't find them, which can be, and I sometimes get a bit angry with her. She doesn't to be unkind or anything. She's just incredibly tidy.

4 My little sister has lots of problems and a lot of help from me. But when I can't solve her problems, she can be quite to me. She's a person.

TEST YOURSELF

10 Friendship

A What's a friend?

WHAT'S IMPORTANT IN friendship?

Do you need to:

- **get on well?**
- **trust each other?**
- **have things in common?**
- **always keep in touch?**
- **have a similar sense of humour?**
- **have similar attitudes?**
- **have the same likes and dislikes?**
- **know you can rely on them in a difficult situation?**
- **know they will support you?**
- **know they will tell you the truth and be honest with you?**

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| friendship | the relationship between people who are friends: make friends (with sb) = become friends (with sb) |
| get on (well/badly with sb) | have a good/bad relationship with sb |
| trust | believe sb is good and won't do anything to hurt you |
| have sth in common | have some similar interests |
| keep/be in touch (with sb) | meet, write, phone or text sb regularly |
| sense of humour | the ability to laugh and find sth funny |
| attitude | the way you think or feel about sth |
| dislike | a thing that you do not like OPP like: likes and dislikes |
| rely on sb | feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do reliable adj |
| support | give sb help when they need it |
| tell the truth | say what is true OPP tell lies |
| honest | A person who is honest tells the truth and does not steal or cheat. |

1 Find six more phrases in the box.

| | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| tell ✓ lies ✓ | keep sense | get on the truth | tell in common | have something with someone | in touch friends | make of humour |
|------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------|

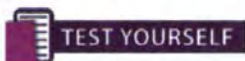
▶ tell lies

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Both brothers have a great sense of humour.
- 1 You can depend on my brother to help if you need it. He's very
 - 2 I really Marcel – that's why I feel I can tell him anything.
 - 3 It's a difficult time for Olivia, but I'm sure her friends will her.
 - 4 When Ed is at work, he works. At the weekend, he doesn't think about work at all. I think that's the right to work, don't you?
 - 5 I used to very well with my cousin, but recently we've argued a lot.
 - 6 Sasha and I don't really have anything in any longer. We've both changed.
 - 7 I manage to keep in with most of my old school friends.
 - 8 Pascal can be very : I don't trust him.
 - 9 Scarlett and I are very similar: we both have the same likes and
 - 10 I think is just as important as family.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word at the end in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He never tells lies. TRUTH He always tells the truth.
- 1 He forms friendly relationships easily. FRIENDS
 - 2 We don't phone or write to each other. TOUCH
 - 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON
 - 4 Kate can laugh at things and find things funny. HUMOUR
 - 5 Jo and Ellen have a lot of similar interests. COMMON
 - 6 Phoebe always does what she says she will do. RELY



B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend

Channel Six

Wednesday 9pm -11pm

This is a TV drama about a group of five young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend break. But things soon **go wrong**. Jack **no longer** gets



on with Dan, and now **realizes** they have nothing in common, while Harry is sorry that he **broke up with** Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy **fancies** Dan, but he is **in a serious relationship** with Sophie, who used to be Amy's best friend. And that's just the beginning ...

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| get to know sb | meet sb a number of times and become friends |
| one another | used for saying that sb does the same thing as another person SYN each other |
| get together | (of two or more people) meet for a social reason |
| go wrong | used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship |
| no longer | not now; not as before SYN not any longer |
| realize | begin to understand sth that you didn't know before |
| break up (with sb) | stop being in a romantic relationship (with sb) |
| go out with sb | have sb as a boyfriend/ girlfriend |
| fancy inf | like sb and want to be their boyfriend/girlfriend |
| in a (serious) relationship | having a boyfriend/girlfriend for a long time |

4 One word is missing from each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

▶ Shall we together for a drink?

1 Hanna is a serious relationship.

2 Lian broke with Chen last week.

3 Paula and I met another at university.

4 How did you get know Anya?

5 We used to meet but not longer.

6 She went with him for two years.

Shall we get together for a drink?

5 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to **know** each (1) when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in common and I really (2) him (he's very good-looking), but unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) at the time. Then it all went (4) He and his girlfriend Inez had a big argument and (5) up. Soon after that, we started to (6) out with (7) another. But after a couple of weeks, Milo (8) that he still wanted to be with Inez, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

6 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ How did you **get** to **know** your best friend?

1 How long have you known one ?

2 How often do you get ?

3 Is there anything you used to do that you don't do any ?

4 Is your friend in a serious ?

5 If 'yes', who is it with? If 'no', is he/she with anyone?

6 If so, how did they to each other?

ABOUT YOU

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

11 Families

A A family history

Marilyn Monroe, also known by the nicknames MM or The Blonde Bombshell, was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**. She had an unhappy **childhood** and spent much of it with **foster parents**. One couple wanted to **adopt** her, but it wasn't possible, and at the age of 16, she **got married**. In fact, in her short life (she died at 36), she had a **complicated** love life: she married three times, and **got divorced** three times. **According to Hollywood sources**, she also had many **romantic** relationships with people such as Marlon Brando and Frank Sinatra.



| GLOSSARY | | | |
|----------------------|--|----------------------------|--|
| nickname | an informal name, not your real name, which may be connected with your personality or appearance | married | having a husband or wife: get married (to sb) SYN marry (sb) v |
| only child | a child with no brothers or sisters | complicated | difficult to understand because it has a lot of different parts |
| single parent | a mother or father who looks after her/his children alone: a single-parent family | divorced | no longer married: get divorced SYN divorce v, ALSO n |
| childhood | the time when you are a child | according to sb/sth | as sb or sth says (NOT according to me) |
| foster parent | sb who takes care of another person's child in their home for a period of time | source | sb or sth that provides information, often for a piece of work or the news |
| adopt a child | take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child | romantic | about love; full of feelings of love |

1 Cover the text above. True or False? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.

- ▶ Marilyn Monroe's nickname was MM. **T**
- 1 Her other nickname was The Blonde Baby.
- 2 She was an only child.
- 3 She grew up with her parents.
- 4 She was adopted.
- 5 She had a happy childhood.
- 6 She got divorced twice.
- 7 People say she had a romantic relationship with Frank Sinatra.
- 8 She died at 36.

2 Match the words from the boxes.

| | | | | | | |
|----------|---------|-------------|--------|-------|-----------|---------|
| foster ✓ | a child | get | single | get | according | only |
| divorced | parent | to somebody | adopt | child | parents ✓ | married |

- ▶ foster parents

3 Complete the text.

My mother is a ▶ single parent. She had me a year after she got married, but got (1) two years later, and didn't have any more children, so, I am an (2) child. But, I had a happy (3) and (4) to my aunt, who lived with us some of the time, I never talked about my father. My aunt had a very different childhood. She was (5) by my grandparents when she was five. Her name is Gloria, but everyone knows her by her (6), which is Gigi. She was married to a man called Enzo, but she wasn't happy with him, and she got (7) after about five years. I was told by one (8) (I won't say who that is) that Gigi had a number of (9) relationships with several pop stars when she was a young woman. I don't know if these stories are true, but her love life was very (10)



B Coincidences

I'm a **twin** (with an **identical** twin sister). My twin sister is married, and last year she **gave birth** to identical twin boys. Is that just a **coincidence**?

My sister's husband, my **brother-in-law**, has two **siblings** (who are sisters). Their husbands are from London, but **previous generations** of their families **originally** came from the same city in Poland. Another coincidence?

I also have a younger brother. His girlfriend is **related** to a family who lived in the same house as my parents, ten years before they did. Is this just another coincidence?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| twin | one of two people who have the same mother and were born at the same time |
| identical | exactly the same |
| coincidence | when two things happen in the same way or at the same time, both of them surprising |
| brother-in-law | 1 the husband of your sister 2 the brother of your husband or wife ALSO sister/mother/daughter-in-law , etc. |
| sibling <i>formal</i> | a brother or sister |
| previous | coming or happening before or earlier |
| generation | all the people in a family born at about the same time |
| originally | in the beginning, before other things happened |
| be related (to sb) | be in the same family as sb relative/ relation <i>n</i> |

SPOTLIGHT *birth*

When a woman **gives birth**, she has a baby, and the day that baby **is born** is their **date of birth**, e.g. 07/05/1998. Every year, on the day of their birth, people celebrate their **birthday**.

4 Yes or No?

► Is your mother-in-law your mother?

1 Is your son your sibling?

2 Are your cousins your relatives?

3 Is your daughter-in-law your son's wife?

4 Is it a coincidence when one thing happens after another thing?

گروه آموزشی دانش‌اندیش

5 Are you and your father from the same generation?

6 Is your date of birth the day you were born?

7 Do identical twins look exactly the same?

8 Can a father give birth to a baby?

5 Complete the sentences.

► I have two sisters who are identical **twins**.

1 Three of my family have lived in the same house: my grandparents, my parents, and now my brother and his wife.

2 Some of my live abroad: my father's parents are in Naples, and two of my cousins live in Paris.

3 What's your of birth?

4 My-in-..... is always giving me advice. My wife finds him a bit annoying.

5 My sister gave yesterday to a baby boy, weighing just over three kilos.

6 Both of my parents had the **same** family name before they got married. That's an incredible, isn't it?

6 Complete the words in these questions.

► Have you got a **brother-**..... or **sister**.....-in-law.....?

1 Have you got any s.....?

2 Do different g..... of your family live in the same home? If so, who?

3 Are you r..... to any people who live in a different country? If so, who?

4 Where did your family come from o.....? Do you know?

5 Where do/did the p..... generations of your family live?

6 Do you know any tw.....? Are they i.....?

ABOUT YOU

7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

► Have you got a brother- or sister-in-law?

Yes, I've got a sister-in-law called Caitlin. My brother married her two years ago.



TEST YOURSELF

12 Marriage and divorce

A Weddings

In the UK, it is the **custom** for many couples to **get engaged** before they get married. For the **wedding** itself, couples can choose a **religious ceremony**, for example in a church, or a **civil ceremony**, in a **registry office** or some other building. On the day of the wedding, the woman is called the **bride**, and the man is the **groom**. After the wedding, most married couples have a **reception**, followed by a **honeymoon**. During the reception, several people **make speeches** and wish the couple a happy **marriage**. On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding **anniversary**.



| GLOSSARY | | | |
|-------------------------|--|----------------------------|--|
| custom | sth that people in society or a community usually do: <i>It's a custom for people to give presents to a couple getting married.</i> | (wedding) reception | a meal and/or party after a wedding |
| get/be engaged | If two people get engaged or are engaged , they have agreed to get married. | honeymoon | a holiday for a couple who have just got married |
| wedding ceremony | a time when two people get married a formal public event. A religious ceremony takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. A civil ceremony is a non-religious ceremony which often takes place in a registry office . | make a speech | give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event |
| | | marriage | the period when two people are married |
| | | celebrate | do sth to show you are happy about a special day |
| | | anniversary | a day that is exactly a year after a special event |

1 Put these words in the correct order.

the reception ▶ the couple meet 1 the anniversary
 the wedding the honeymoon get engaged

2 Underline the correct word.

- ▶ They got engaged / married last week. The wedding is planned for June.
- 1 Jake and Emma's wedding / marriage is next Saturday.
- 2 Jake is the groom / bride.
- 3 It's a civil / religious ceremony in St Peter's Church.
- 4 The reception will be before / after the wedding ceremony.
- 5 Speeches are a custom during the ceremony / reception.
- 6 On their honeymoon, Jake and Emma will be bride and groom / husband and wife.

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

- ▶ Do couples usually get engaged before they get married?
- 1 Can couples have a religious ceremony or a ceremony in a office?
- 2 Does the usually wear a dress of a particular colour? If so, what colour?
- 3 Is there usually a after the ceremony?
- 4 Do people often speeches? If so, who does it?
- 5 Is it the for the wife to wear a wedding ring on her left hand?
- 6 Do couples often go on a after the wedding?
- 7 Do couples usually their wedding every year?
- 8 Do most last forever in your country?

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....


4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student. Are there any other customs you have during weddings in your country?

TEST YOURSELF

B Divorce

Although most couples say they 'marry for life', recent **statistics** do not support this **belief**. Currently about 42% of married couples in the UK **separate** and get divorced, with the average marriage lasting about thirty years. Reasons for deciding to live **apart** vary, but certainly include money problems – which cause **pressure** in a relationship – **lack of** communication, one partner having a **sexual** relationship (an **affair**) with another person, **constant** arguments, and lack of **equality** in the relationship, e.g. if one person does all the housework, or one person makes all the decisions.

SPOTLIGHT *separate* v, adj

The verb **separate** means 'stop being together'. The adjective **separate** means 'away; not together'. Listen to the  for the different ways they are pronounced.

- My parents **separated** when I was a child. (SYN **split up**)
- The older children are **separate from** the younger ones in the school.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|----------------------|--|-----------------|---|
| statistics | a collection of numbers that give information about sth | sexual | connected with sex |
| belief | a strong feeling that sth is true or real | affair | a sexual relationship between two people that is normally secret because at least one person in the relationship is married |
| apart | not together: live apart = live in separate homes | constant | happening all the time, or again and again ALSO continuous happening all the time: continuous noise |
| vary | be different from each other, or change according to the situation | equality | being the same or having the same rights equal <i>adj</i> |
| pressure | a feeling of worry and stress because of what you have to do | | |
| lack (of sth) | not having sth or not having enough of sth | | |

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---|-------|
| ▶ separate / <u>sexual</u> | <u>S</u> | 4 equality / <u>constant</u> | ..... |
| 1 <u>equality</u> / <u>pressure</u> | ..... | 5 <u>affair</u> / <u>statistics</u> | ..... |
| 2 vary / <u>lack</u> | ..... | 6 <u>belief</u> / <u>pressure</u> | ..... |
| 3 <u>statistics</u> / <u>split</u> | ..... | 7 <u>separate (adj)</u> / <u>affair</u> | ..... |

6 Yes or No?

- | | |
|---|------------|
| ▶ If two people live apart , they don't live with each other. | <u>Yes</u> |
| 1 If something is constant , it happens from time to time. | ..... |
| 2 Equality is about how good or bad something is. | ..... |
| 3 A lack of something is when you haven't got enough of something. | ..... |
| 4 Statistics give you information through numbers. | ..... |
| 5 When couples separate , they stay together. | ..... |
| 6 If things vary , they don't change. | ..... |

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ In some cultures, there is a general belief that marriage is for ever.
- 1 They were only married for four years, but now they live
 - 2 You can get lots of figures from, but they don't tell the whole truth.
 - 3 If you have money problems, it can put on any relationship.
 - 4 A of communication has been a problem for them. They just don't talk to each other.
 - 5 Sophie's parents when she was a teenager; she stayed with her mum.
 - 6 In an relationship, there is less chance that a marriage will come to an end.
 - 7 His parents got divorced last year and now live in houses, but they're only about a hundred metres from each other.
 - 8 Reasons for divorce enormously.

8 ABOUT YOU Cover the text above and write down five reasons why couples get divorced. Can you also think of at least two more reasons why people get a divorce?



TEST YOURSELF

13 Geography

A Geographical features



waterfall/falls

One of the most important **geographical features** in South America is the Iguazu Falls, which are the **waterfalls** of the Iguazu River. They are **located** on the border between Argentina and Brazil in the **southern** part of South America. The falls **divide** the river into the upper and lower Iguazu. The river **flows** mostly through Brazil, but the falls are **mainly** on the Argentinian side.



desert



mountainous region (the Alps)



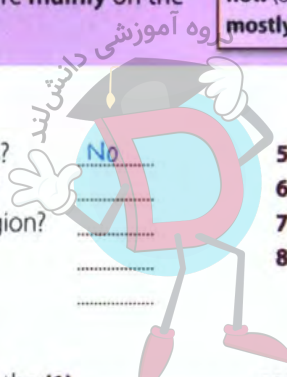
jungle (the Amazon)

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| geographical | relating to the Earth and everything on it, such as mountains, rivers, etc. geography <i>n</i> |
| feature | an important part of something |
| located | in a place location <i>n</i> : <i>The house is in a lovely location.</i> |
| southern | connected with, in or from the <i>south</i> ALSO northern, eastern, western , etc. plus south-eastern, north-western , etc. |
| divide | cut or separate sth into smaller parts |
| flow (of water) | move in a continuous way in one direction flow <i>v</i> |
| mostly | almost all SYN mainly |

1 Yes or No?

- ▶ Are waterfalls usually on lakes?
- 1 Can you swim up a waterfall?
- 2 Is the Alps a mountainous region?
- 3 Are deserts full of water?
- 4 Do rivers flow?



- 5 Do rivers sometimes divide?
- 6 Is a jungle like a desert?
- 7 Is **mainly** the same as **always**?
- 8 Does the location of something tell you where it is?

2 Complete the text.

Budapest is **located** in the (1) part of Hungary. The River Danube (2) through the city from the north, and (3) the city into two parts: hilly Buda on the (4) side and the much larger and flatter Pest on the (5) side. The city has a population of nearly 2 million, which lives (6) in Pest. The bridges and castles are two of the most famous (7) of Budapest.



3 Do this quiz.

▶ London is located on the **south-eastern** side of England.

- 1 The Amazon jungle is in
- 2 The River Nile flows through the continent of
- 3 The Alps is a mountainous region in the continent of
- 4 Niagara Falls is a series of three waterfalls on the border between and
- 5 The Sahara is a desert in
- 6 Patagonia is in the southern part of
- 7 In 1993, Czechoslovakia was divided into two countries: the Republic and
- 8 The Urals are an important geographical feature of western

GEOGRAPHY QUIZ

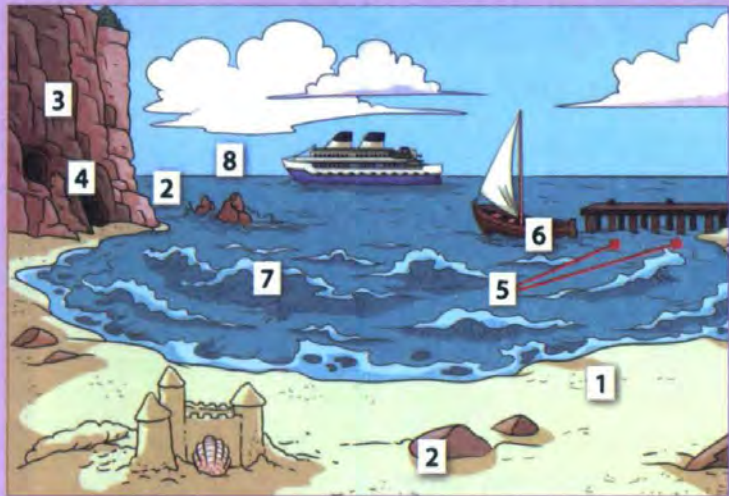
4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY What are some of the main geographical features in your country, and where are they located? Write your answer, or tell another student.



B The coast

Wanscombe, near the **port** of Padstow, has a lovely **bay**. Its **beach**¹ is **sandy** with a few **rocks**² quite near the **shore**. There's a **cliff**³ behind the beach, and children often play in the **caves**⁴ there.

At one end of the beach, there's a small **harbour**⁵. When the weather's bad and the sea is **rough**, it **protects** the **sailing boats**⁶ from the high **waves**⁷. You can sometimes see large ships **on the horizon**⁸.



GLOSSARY

port a town or city that has a large area of water where ships load goods, etc; an area where ships stop to let goods and passengers on and off

bay a part of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve

sandy

covered in the white/yellow material you find in deserts and on beaches **sand** *n*

shore

the land along the edge of the sea or a lake

rough

A **rough** sea has big waves. **OPP** calm

protect sb/sth (from sth)

keep sth/sb safe from sth **protection** *n*

5 Find the end of each word.

cave | rocks | sandy | sailing | bay | horizon | protect | port | shore | beach | waves | rough | harbour | sand | cliff

6 Which words are being defined?

▶ (of the sea) not calm

1 the line in the distance between the land and the sky

2 a large piece of stone

3 the land at the edge of the sea where it meets the beach

4 a high area of rock near the sea

5 a place where ships or boats are kept and protected from the sea

6 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea where people sit and relax

7 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground

8 A type of boat you see in a harbour

rough

7 Complete the sentences.

▶ It was a nice day, so we went to the beach.

1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very

2 A huge hit the boat, and I almost fell out.

3 The harbour the boats in bad weather.

4 Hamburg is a major in Germany where about 9,000 ships call a year.

5 You have to climb down the to get to the beach.

6 I looked out to sea and I could just see a boat on the

7 We didn't swim, but we walked along the with our feet in the water.

8 The beach is great for children because it's and they can play there safely.

8 ABOUT YOU Do you often have holidays on the coast? Do you go to a particular bay? How do you get there? What's the beach like? Write your answers, or tell another student.

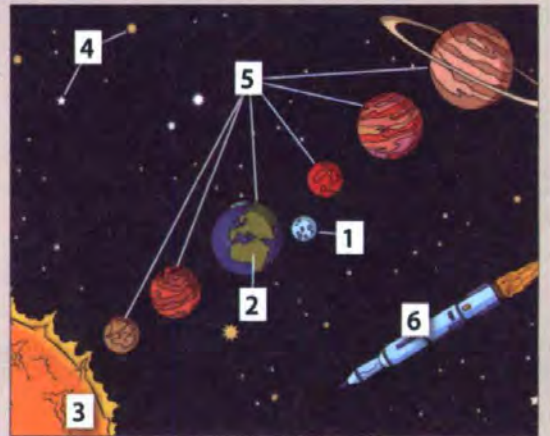


TEST YOURSELF

14 The universe and science

A The universe

- The **moon**¹ is a **satellite** of the **earth**²; **in other words**, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**³ is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**⁴ because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately 8 minutes to **reach** the earth.
- 9 **planets**⁵ revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system**.
- 100 years ago, sending **rockets**⁶ into **space** seemed **incredible**, but now it is a fact of life and we have learned **a great deal** about the **universe** since then.



GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|-----------------------|--|---------------------|--|
| satellite | an object that moves round a bigger object in space | reach | arrive somewhere |
| in other words | used for saying sth in a different way | space [U] | the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars |
| circle | go round sth in a circle SYN revolve (around sth) | incredible | difficult to believe |
| approximately | about, more or less SYN roughly | a great deal | a lot SYN a good deal |
| | | universe | the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars |

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|---|-------|
| ▶ The sun circles the earth. | <u>moon</u> | 5 Mars is a star. | ..... |
| 1 The planets are in the solar space. | ..... | 6 We can send planes into space. | ..... |
| 2 The earth revolves around the moon. | ..... | 7 We've learned a big deal about space. | ..... |
| 3 The sun is a planet. | ..... | 8 The world is the whole of space and everything in it. | ..... |
| 4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. | ..... |  |  |

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ There are billions of stars in the universe.
- 1 Is it important to send rockets into
 - 2 Mars, Jupiter and Venus are all
 - 3 As far as we know, all human life lives on
 - 4 For many people, the idea of human life in other parts of the universe is
 - 5 It takes rockets 260 days to Mars.
 - 6 The earth around the sun every 365 days.
 - 7 One of the crashed when it landed.
 - 8 The moon is a of the earth.
 - 9 The sun and all its planets are known as the system.
 - 10 We still don't know a great about life on other planets.
 - 11 The earth revolves around the sun: in other, the earth is a planet in our solar system.

3 Cover the text and glossary. Look at the picture. Name five things you can see.

- ▶ Mars
-
-



TEST YOURSELF

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent **spacecraft**, including **satellites**, to **explore** the surface of Mars, and **carried out experiments** to see if they can **discover** any signs of life. **So far**, they haven't found any, but an **analysis** of the **solid** rocks brought back from Mars has **confirmed** that they were created by the presence of water and wind, so perhaps life could have **existed previously** on the planet.

SPOTLIGHT *discover or invent?*

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** *n*

If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** *n*

- They've **discovered** a new plant.
- Who **invented** the telescope?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| scientist | a person who studies the physical world science <i>n</i> scientific <i>adj</i> |
| spacecraft | a vehicle that travels into space, e.g. a rocket |
| satellite | electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around a planet |
| explore | travel round a place in order to learn about it exploration <i>n</i> |
| carry out sth | do and complete a task |
| experiment | a scientific test in order to learn/find out sth |
| so far | up to now |
| analysis | the careful study of sth in order to explain it analyse <i>v</i> |
| solid | with no holes or spaces inside: solid rock |
| confirm | say or show that sth is true or definite confirmation <i>n</i> |
| exist | If sth exists , it is present in the real world. existence <i>n</i> |
| previously | in a way that happened before or earlier |

4 Circle the correct word.

- There was an experiment / exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals only **explore** / **exist** in South America – nowhere else.
 - 2 They're going to **explore** / **analyse** the area to see what they can find.
 - 3 The **discovery** / **invention** of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
 - 4 Scientists have **carried out** / **confirmed** experiments on animals.
 - 5 Who **invented** / **discovered** the ancient city of Machu Pichu in Peru?
 - 6 We've got the information, so now we need to **analyse** / **explore** it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- Television was an incredible invention.
- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1 There's a report from a group of | INVENT |
| 2 The of penicillin was of major importance. | SCIENCE |
| 3 We're waiting for of the results. | DISCOVER |
| 4 They will the findings in the laboratory. | CONFIRM |
| 5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space | ANALYSIS |
| 6 Humans are always looking for the of new life forms. | EXPLORE |
| | EXIST |

6 Complete the words in the sentences.

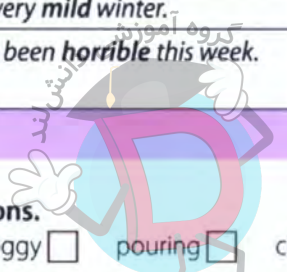
- Who discovered the planet Venus?
- 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life e..... on Mars.
 - 2 They left camp and went to e..... the countryside to see what they could find.
 - 3 With the use of s....., TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
 - 4 Doctors believe they will have to c..... o..... further experiments with the drug.
 - 5 We have analysed the s..... rocks brought back from the planet, but s..... f..... we haven't found anything interesting.
 - 6 Scientists have now c..... that climate change is really happening.
 - 7 We are still waiting for an a..... of the results before we reach a conclusion.
 - 8 There is now s..... evidence that the ice cap is getting smaller.
 - 9 Do you know if life existed p..... on other planets in the solar system?
 - 10 Scientists are developing a s..... which will take paying passengers to the moon and back.



15 Weather conditions

A Normal weather

| Word | Example | Meaning |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| pour (with rain) | <i>It's pouring (with rain) outside!</i> | rain a lot |
| shower | <i>We had a heavy shower this morning.</i> | rain for a short period of time, which can be heavy (= a lot) or light (= a little) |
| rainfall | <i>Rainfall is low in the summer.</i> | the total amount of rain in a place over a period of time |
| the cold | <i>I hate the cold.</i> | cold weather |
| freezing | <i>It was freezing (cold) yesterday.</i> | very cold |
| thunder and lightning | <i>We had a lot of thunder and lightning during the storm.</i> | a loud noise in the sky when there is a storm, and then a sudden bright light in the sky |
| sunshine | <i>We sat outside in the sunshine.</i> | the light and heat from the sun |
| fog | <i>There was thick fog on the motorway this morning.</i> | Fog is cloud close to the ground which is difficult to see through. Thick fog is very difficult to see through. foggy adj |
| mild | <i>This has been a very mild winter.</i> | not very cold, and therefore pleasant |
| horrible | <i>The weather has been horrible this week.</i> | very bad or unpleasant SYN dreadful, awful, terrible |



1 Tick the wet weather conditions.

▶ rainfall sunshine foggy pouring cloudy shower freezing mild

2 Match 1–6 with a–g.

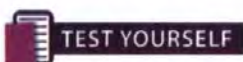
- | | | |
|-------------------|-------|---------------------|
| ▶ don't like | ..... | a weather |
| 1 thick | ..... | b with rain |
| 2 a heavy | ..... | c the cold ✓ |
| 3 horrible | ..... | d cold |
| 4 freezing | ..... | e shower |
| 5 a mild | ..... | f fog |
| 6 pour | ..... | g day |

3 Complete the words in the texts.

- When I woke up it was quite cloudy but ▶ mild, for the time of year. Then on the way to work, it suddenly got very dark and we had some t..... and l....., and it started p..... with r..... I got really wet.
- Yesterday was fantastic. It was incredibly hot, and we had about ten hours of s.....
- We've had d..... weather this week. It's been so f..... in the morning that you could hardly see, followed by heavy s..... almost every day, and f..... cold as well.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- When do you get the heaviest rainfall?
- Do you get a lot of sunshine? If so, when?
- Is spring generally cold or mild?
- Do you get much fog? If so, when?
- Is it often freezing cold? If so, when? And do you like the cold?



B Extreme weather



These natural **disasters** occur quite regularly in certain parts of the world.

Hurricane¹: a **sudden** and **violent** storm with very strong winds, which often **destroys** buildings and brings down **branches** and trees.

Flood²: too much water, often the result of heavy rain, which **floods** the land and **damages** roads, bridges, buildings, etc.

Tidal wave³: a very large ocean wave, often caused by an **extreme** storm or **earthquake**, which destroys things when it reaches land.

Drought⁴: a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death**.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| disaster | sth very bad that happens causing harm or death |
| occur | happen |
| regularly | If sth happens regularly , it happens again and again with the same amount of time in between. |
| sudden | happening very quickly suddenly <i>adv</i> |
| violent | very strong and usually causing damage |
| destroy | break sth completely so it cannot be used again |
| branch | one of the parts of a tree that grow out from the thick main part |
| damage | break or harm sth damage <i>n</i> |
| extreme | very great or strong |
| earthquake | a sudden strong movement of the ground, which often opens up |
| crops | plants that are grown for food, e.g. <i>rice, potatoes</i> |
| starve (to death) | die because you do not have enough food to eat |

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| ▶ flood / <u>moon</u> D | | |
| 1 <u>crop</u> / <u>occur</u> | 4 <u>violent</u> / <u>tidal</u> | 7 <u>damage</u> / <u>branch</u> |
| 2 <u>occur</u> / <u>earthquake</u> | 5 <u>drought</u> / <u>bought</u> | 8 <u>disaster</u> / <u>regularly</u> |
| 3 <u>disaster</u> / <u>starve</u> | 6 <u>drought</u> / <u>out</u> | 9 <u>flood</u> / <u>destruction</u> |

6 Match 1–5 with a–f.

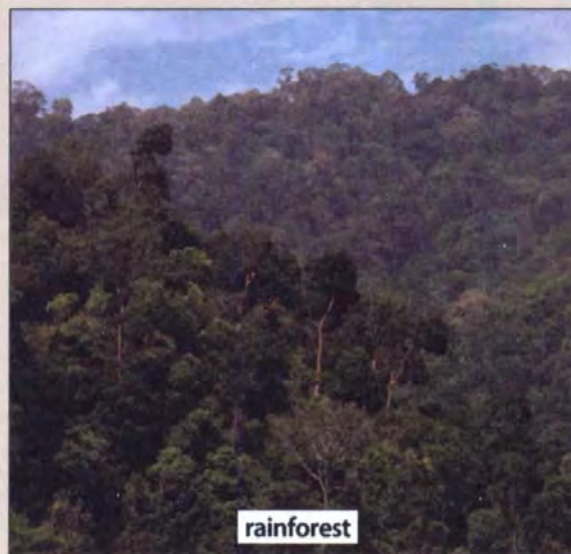
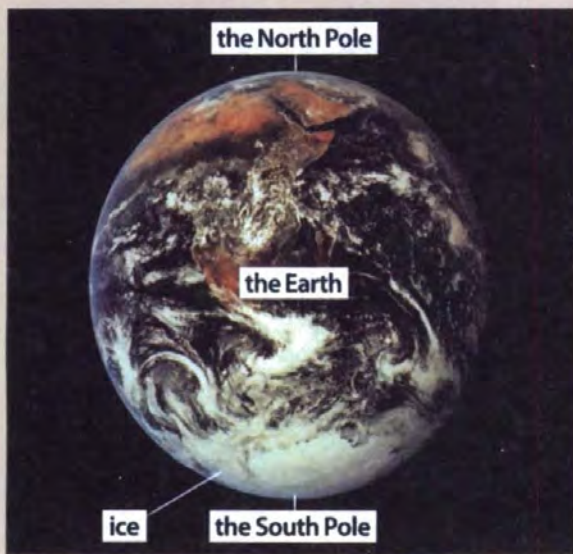
- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| ▶ disaster d | a a long period of very dry weather |
| 1 flood | b sudden movement of the ground |
| 2 tidal wave | c very strong winds |
| 3 drought | d a very bad thing that causes harm or death ✓ |
| 4 earthquake | e a very large movement in the ocean |
| 5 hurricane | f become filled or covered with water |

7 Complete the texts.

- ▶ When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
- 1 48 hours of heavy rain has brought more to the south-west of England. Many roads have been badly and winds have also brought down and entire trees. Two bridges have been completely and will need to be rebuilt.
- 2 With no rain for months, the in Ethiopia is the worst for ten years. Food is in short supply because most of the have died, and now tens of thousands of people are and could die unless help arrives very soon. It is one of the worst natural in living memory.
- 3 We are getting reports of a violent earthquake in Western China. It without warning, has caused a huge amount of and has completely whole villages.
- 4 California is experiencing more weather conditions. After the recent floods, a storm is now reaching the west coast of the state. It is accompanied by winds of over 100mph. Weather experts say that these are now occurring : at least one a year over the past ten years.



16 Climate change



Global warming is the **gradual** increase in the average temperature of the earth's **atmosphere**, and is caused by an increase of **harmful gases** in the **environment**. Many scientists believe that most of this **pollution** is the result of **human** activities. Here are some of the **effects**:

- As the **ice** at the **poles melts**, sea levels could **rise** by almost a metre in the next century.

There will be more extreme and **unpredictable** weather, e.g. **heatwaves** or floods.

The earth will become even warmer because **rainforests** are **disappearing**.

- **Famine** and **disease** will **spread**, and this will **affect** people, especially in poor countries. They will have to import **grain**, which will be too expensive.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------------|---|----------------------|---|
| climate change | changes in the earth's weather, especially the increase in the temperature of the earth's <i>atmosphere</i> | melt | If you heat ice, it melts : it changes from a solid to a liquid . ALSO solid <i>adj</i> , liquid <i>adj</i> increase, go higher rise <i>n</i> |
| global | covering or affecting the whole world: global issues/warming | rise | OPP fall <i>v, n</i> |
| gradual | happening slowly over a long period of time gradually <i>adv</i> | unpredictable | If sth is unpredictable , you can't say how it will change in the future. OPP predictable ; predict <i>v</i> |
| the atmosphere | the gases around the Earth, planets, etc. | heatwave | a period of unusually hot weather |
| harmful | causing damage, injury or illness harm <i>v</i> | disappear | If sth or sb disappears , they go away and people cannot see them. |
| gas | a substance like air, e.g. <i>oxygen, hydrogen, carbon dioxide</i> | famine | Famine happens when many people die because there is not enough food in a country. |
| the environment | the natural world; the air, land and water in which people, plants and animals live environmental <i>adj</i> | disease | illness in people, animals or plants |
| pollution | gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment pollute <i>v</i> | spread | reach more people or places |
| human | connected with people | grain | the seeds of a plant that we eat, e.g. <i>rice, corn, wheat</i> |

SPOTLIGHT *effect n., affect v*

An **effect** is a change which is caused by something.

- What are the **effects** of global warming?

Affect means 'change something in a particular way'.

- Climate change will **affect** all our lives.

1 Complete the words.

▶ hu ma n

1 pro du cto rl e

2 diso ro ea r

3 fo mo ne

4 atmos ph er e

5 du so lu to n

6 envo no me nt

7 po ll ut io n

8 ha rm fu l

9 lo qu d

10 gro un do al

2 Good or bad news? Write G or B.

▶ This gas won't harm anyone. G

1 Some kinds of animals are disappearing.

2 The animals aren't affected by the floods.

3 Famine is spreading.

4 This liquid is harmful.

5 There's less disease in the city now.

6 The earth's temperature is rising.

7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting.

8 The river is polluted.

9 It's not a local problem: it's global.

10 We have a lot of grain.

3 Circle the correct word.

▶ If something rises, it goes up / down.

1 Ice is solid / liquid.

2 How does the situation effect / affect you?

3 It's all very predictable / unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.

4 My brother is studying the effect of the problem on the environment / the pollution.

5 Global warming is caused by people / human activity.

6 There was snow in the mountains, but now it's spreading / melting.

7 If there is a gradual change in something, it happens slowly / quickly.

8 Water is a liquid / gas.

9 The rainforest is gradually disappearing / melting.

10 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere / effect.

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ The earth is gradually getting warmer.

1 We had a lot of extreme weather last year: a long ho to in the summer and then rain and floods in the autumn. I think it's all part of ch an ge.

2 If you freeze water, it changes from lo to so li do.

3 The beach was po ll ut ed with oil, which seriously aff ec te d the sea birds and animals.

4 Environmentalists pr ed ic th at there will be a ri se in sea levels in the future.

5 With gl ob al wa rm in g, some kinds of plants and animals are di sa pp ea ri ng ve ry fa st.

6 Certain diseases sp re ad from person to person very quickly.

7 Po ll ut io n has a ve ry ha rm fu l ef fe ct on the environment.

8 After many months without rain, there will be only small quantities of gr ai n to feed people, so there is a real danger of fo ul du re in this part of Africa.

9 What are the main ef fe ct s of global wa rm in g?

10 Doctors fear the du so lu to n co ul d so on as fa r as Er op e.

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How worried are you about global warming?

2 Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?

3 Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?

4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?



17 Saving the environment

A What can governments do?

Governments around the world need to do the following:

- **set targets** to **reduce** the levels of **carbon dioxide** in the atmosphere
- get **developing countries** to **sign up** to environmental targets
- **convince** certain countries that they must **take** climate change **seriously**
- introduce public information **campaigns**
- reduce air travel, which is a major **source** of pollution
- increase the use of **renewable energy**.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| set | decide what sth will be: <i>set a date for a meeting</i> |
| target | a result that you want to reach or achieve |
| reduce | make sth smaller or less in quantity, size, etc. |
| carbon dioxide | a gas breathed out by people and animals (CO ₂) |
| developing country | a country that is poor and is just starting to have modern industry |
| sign up (to do sth) | agree formally to do sth |
| convince | make sb believe sth |
| take sth seriously | show that you understand sth is important |
| campaign | a plan to do a number of things to get a special result |
| source | where sth comes from |
| renewable energy | energy provided by the sun, wind and water |

1 All the underlined letters in these words have the same sound, except one. Which is the odd one out? Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

carbon developing convince country seriously renewable energy

ANSWER:

2 True or false? Write T or F. Correct the false answers.

- ▶ If you **reduce** something, you make it bigger. *F - If you reduce something, you make it smaller.*
- 1 A **campaign** is part of the countryside.
- 2 If you **convince** somebody, you tell them something that isn't true.
- 3 The **source** of something is where it comes from.
- 4 If you **sign up** to something, you formally agree to do it.
- 5 Coal and gas are examples of **renewable energy**.
- 6 A **target** is something you want to reach or achieve.
- 7 A **developing country** is rich with lots of modern industry.
- 8 **Carbon dioxide** is solid.

3 Cover the text at the top of the page and complete these dialogues.

- ▶ What does CO₂ stand for? ~ It stands for carbon dioxide.
- 1 What should governments do? ~ They need to set for reducing pollution.
- 2 What kind of targets? ~ They need to the levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
- 3 Has everyone signed up to these targets? ~ We still need the support of more countries.
- 4 Which governments do we still need to that climate change is happening? ~ Quite a few.
- 5 Why is that? ~ Because not all of them take it
- 6 What kind of public will help? ~ Something which gives people more information.
- 7 What should we try to increase? ~ Different forms of renewable
- 8 Why should we reduce the number of flights? ~ Because they're a major of pollution.



TEST YOURSELF

B What can individuals do?

As **individuals**, we can also have an **impact** by making a few changes in our daily lives:

- walk or cycle **instead of** getting into our cars.
- **save** water, e.g. by turning off the **tap**¹ when you are cleaning your teeth.
- don't **waste energy**, e.g. **switch off**² lights when you leave a room.
- don't **throw away rubbish**: **recycle it whenever and wherever** possible.
- don't **water** your grass in summer. It doesn't need it, and it will grow back.



recycling bins

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| individual | one person individual <i>adj</i> |
| impact | the effect that sth has impact on sth <i>v</i> |
| instead of sth | in place of sth |
| save | use less of sth |
| waste | use too much of sth or use it badly |
| energy | the power from electricity, gas, coal, etc. |
| switch sth off/on | SYN turn sth off/on ; Switch is only used with electrical things, not taps. |
| throw sth away | put sth that you do not want in the bin |
| rubbish | things that you do not want any more |
| recycle | do sth to materials such as paper and plastic so that they can be used again recycling <i>n</i> |
| water | give sth water |

SPOTLIGHT *whenever, wherever, whatever*

Whenever = at any and every time:

- Save energy **whenever** you can.

Wherever = at, to or in any place:

- Think about the environment **wherever** you are.

Whatever = anything or everything:

- We must do **whatever** we can to help.

4 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------|-------------|
| ▶ save | c | a rubbish |
| 1 switch off | ..... | b the grass |
| 2 don't waste | ..... | c water ✓ |
| 3 recycle | ..... | d taps |
| 4 water | ..... | e lights |
| 5 turn off | ..... | f energy |

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We must do ▶ **whatever** we can to help the environment.
- 1 You can s..... a lot of water if you have a shower i..... of a bath.
 - 2 You can save e..... if you put on a jumper and turn the heating off.
 - 3 You can r..... most forms of plastic, so don't just t..... that bottle away.
 - 4 Climate change i..... on all countries, but also on each i..... in society.
 - 5 It is important to save water and energy w..... and w..... it is possible.
 - 6 It is important to believe that individuals can have an i..... on the environment.
 - 7 Do you think r..... bins are a good idea? Do you recycle most of your r.....?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

What other things, as individuals, can we do:

- to save water?
- to save energy?
- to increase recycling?
- to save the environment?



TEST YOURSELF

18 Animals, insects and birds

A Animals, insects and birds



bull



tiger



camel



bear



leopard



wolf



crocodile



eagle



spider



butterfly



bee



mosquito

Many of these creatures live in the wild, which means they live in nature and not with people, e.g. tigers. You can see many of them in a zoo. A bee, a butterfly and a mosquito are all insects: small creatures with six legs and usually wings.

1 Write the names of these creatures in order from big to small.

bear butterfly eagle camel ✓ bee leopard mosquito

big ▶ camel small

2 Yes or No?

- ▶ Can lions and tigers swim? Yes
- 1 Do leopards have spots?
- 2 Do bulls have feathers?
- 3 Do eagles have feathers?
- 4 Can mosquitos make you ill?
- 5 Do bears have fur?
- 6 Do camels have wings?
- 7 Do tigers have a tail?
- 8 Do wolves have fur?
- 9 Do butterflies have wings?
- 10 Do spiders fly?
- 11 Do some butterflies have spots?

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bees make honey, don't they?
- 1 They say can go for months without drinking.
- 2 There are a lot of in the zoo: animals, insects and fish.
- 3 You can see lots of animals in the in parts of Africa.
- 4 Did you see any tigers when you went to the ?
- 5 A spider has eight legs (not six), so it's not an
- 6 The bird had a problem with one of its and it couldn't fly.
- 7 I love the on tigers – they're beautiful.
- 8 Thick keeps bears warm in cold winters.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

In your country, which of the creatures at the top of the page do people kill, and why?

- ▶ People kill spiders because they don't want them in their homes, or because they're afraid of them.



B Unusual facts about animals

Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are **poisonous**, but many are **harmless**. In size, they **vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** ten metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.




Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.



GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------------|---|
| poisonous | If an animal or insect is poisonous , it produces a dangerous substance (poison) that can kill or harm you. | average lifespan | normal or typical the time that sth is likely to live (For people, we say life expectancy .) |
| harmless | not causing damage, injury or illness OPP harmful ; harm n, v | bone |  |
| vary | (of a group of similar things) be different from each other | hunt | go after sth, usually an animal, to catch and kill it |
| up to | used when saying the most an amount can be | attack | try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force attack n |
| weigh | have a certain weight n, which is how heavy sth is | sting | a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin sting v Bees sting , but mosquitos and snakes bite . |
| survive | continue to live in a difficult situation survival n | | |

5 True, false or both according to the text? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.

- ▶ The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F - The average lifespan of a shark is 25 years.
- 1 Most snakes are poisonous. 4 Snakes can weigh up to 250 kilos.
- 2 Most sharks are harmless to humans. 5 Sharks have 400 bones in their body.
- 3 Snakes can survive without the sun's heat. 6 Sharks sting when they attack.

6 Answer the questions. Do you know ...?

- ▶ if **attack** is a noun, a verb, or both? both
- 1 the noun from the verb **survive**?
- 2 the time that people are likely to live? Life
- 3 the noun from the verb **weigh**?
- 4 the adjective from **poison**?
- 5 the two adjectives from the noun **harm**?
- 6 the verb from the noun **sting**?

7 Complete the words in these animal facts.

- ▶ The average **lifespan** of most bees is 30-35 days.
- 1 Some snakes can s for almost a year without food.
- 2 Nobody knows the a lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
- 3 People h sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
- 4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee s
- 5 Snakes can grow u to nine metres long.
- 6 The size of sharks can v from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.
- 7 P from some snakes can kill you.
- 8 Some snakes can w as much as 250 kilos.



TEST YOURSELF

19 Adjectives (1)

A Gradable and ungradable adjectives

We had an **enormous** meal to celebrate my birthday.

I was **amazed** at the size of the statue.

My son's new flat is **really tiny**.

The food at the pub was **awful**. Don't go there.

I was **absolutely exhausted** after the long walk.

Dad was **absolutely furious** when I took his car.

It's **essential** that you buy a good dictionary.

Marcel had a **brilliant** game. He was the best player.

You must go to Istanbul – it's a **fascinating** place.

We're both **really terrified** of dogs. It's stupid, I know.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| enormous | very big SYN huge | amazed | very surprised |
| tiny | very small | awful | very bad SYN dreadful |
| exhausted | very tired | furious | very angry |
| essential | very important SYN vital | brilliant inf | very good |
| fascinating | very interesting | terrified | very frightened |

SPOTLIGHT gradable and ungradable adjectives

Gradable adjectives, e.g. *good, big*, can be used in comparative and superlative forms, and can be used with **very**.

▪ **very good/big**

Ungradable adjectives, e.g. *fantastic, tiny*, cannot be used in comparative and superlative forms, and are used with **absolutely**.

▪ **absolutely fantastic/tiny** (NOT *absolutely good*)

You can use **really** with gradable and ungradable adjectives.

▪ **really good/interesting, etc.** ▪ **really essential/fascinating, etc.**

1 Match the gradable adjectives from Box A with the extreme adjectives from Box B.

A **angry** ✓ small tired interesting good bad important big frightened

B enormous dreadful vital furious ✓ tiny terrified fascinating brilliant exhausted

▶ angry/furious

.....

2 Underline the correct answer. Be careful: both answers may be correct.

- ▶ I thought the film was very good / awful. 5 Her books about India are really *interesting* / fascinating.
- 1 He was absolutely *frightened* / terrified at sea. 6 A dictionary is absolutely *important* / essential.
- 2 I was very *tired* / exhausted by the end of the day. 7 We were really *surprised* / amazed at how many people were there.
- 3 The orchestra was really good / brilliant. 8 The programmes on Central Asia were very good / brilliant.
- 4 Matt was absolutely *angry* / furious when he found us in the garage.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Was it a bad film? ~ Yes, absolutely awful
- 1 Did you find the book interesting? ~ Yes, really
- 2 Was it a big place? ~ Yes, absolutely
- 3 It was a good match, wasn't it. ~ Oh yeah, really
- 4 I expect you were tired at the end of the day. ~ Yes, absolutely
- 5 Were you frightened in the hospital? ~ Yes, absolutely
- 6 I think he's a bad actor. ~ I agree – really
- 7 It's a very small car, isn't it? ~ Yes, absolutely
- 8 Were you surprised your brother was there? ~ Yes, really



TEST YOURSELF

B -ed / -ing adjectives

| -ed / -ing adjectives | Examples | Meaning |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| amazed amazing | <i>I was amazed at the quality of the dancing.</i> (The quality of the dancing was amazing .) | very surprised, often in a positive way; very surprising SYN astonished ; astonishing |
| confused confusing | <i>I was confused by the train timetable.</i> (The train timetable was confusing .) | unable to think clearly; not clear |
| disappointed disappointing | <i>I was disappointed with my exam results.</i> | upset because sth was not as good as you expected; upsetting |
| embarrassed embarrassing | <i>I was embarrassed when I forgot his name.</i> | feeling uncomfortable because of sth stupid you have done; making you feel uncomfortable |
| fascinated fascinating | <i>I was fascinated by the painter's use of colour.</i> | very interested; very interesting |
| frightened frightening | <i>I was frightened watching that film.</i> | afraid, scared; making you afraid/scared |
| relaxed relaxing | <i>I felt very relaxed on holiday.</i> | able to rest and not feel worried; making it possible to rest |
| worried worrying | <i>I was worried when Kiko didn't arrive.</i> | unhappy because you think sth bad will happen or has happened; making you unhappy |

SPOTLIGHT the suffixes *-ed* and *-ing*

Adjectives that end with *-ed* describe feelings. Adjectives that end with *-ing* describe the person or thing that makes you have these feelings.

- I was **bored** in the lesson.
- The lesson was **boring**.
- I'm **interested** in photography.
- Photography is **interesting**.

4 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ Some of the beaches on Corfu were absolutely amazing / amazed.
- 1 I think everyone felt *relaxing* / *relaxed* at the party.
- 2 Marcel was a bit *confusing* / *confused* during the lesson.
- 3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather *disappointing* / *disappointed*.
- 4 I was *astonishing* / *astonished* by his reaction.
- 5 I thought China was a *fascinating* / *fascinated* place to visit.
- 6 I think Jose felt a bit *embarrassing* / *embarrassed* about the cost of the meal.
- 7 We were all a bit *worrying* / *worried* when the storm started.
- 8 It was a bit *frightening* / *frightened* when the window got broken.

5 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- ▶ Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified.
- 1 Did you know which direction you were going in? ~ No, I was a bit
- 2 You wore jeans to a formal party?! ~ Yes, I felt a bit
- 3 The weather was awful for the whole holiday. ~ Oh, that's very
- 4 Did you say you lost your passport in Australia? ~ Yes, it was very
- 5 It's hard to believe the children are only 8 or 9. ~ I know. They're
- 6 Were you afraid? ~ Yes, it was a bit
- 7 Do you like sitting in the sun? ~ Yes, I find it very
- 8 Was your father pleased with the hotel? ~ No, he was a bit, actually.

6 In the table above there are two examples for the first two adjectives. Write a second example for the other adjectives.

- ▶ *I was amazed at the quality of the dancing.* The quality of the dancing was amazing.



TEST YOURSELF

20 Adjectives (2): opposites

A Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments:

The rooms were **pleasant** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

I quite like the **modern** design – simple but **effective**.

Most of the staff were **temporary**, but they seemed very good.

Our room was nice, but we thought the **public** areas were a bit dull.

We were **pleased** our room was at the back, where it was quiet.

They put chocolates in our room, which was very **unexpected**.

Being in the centre of town, it was very **convenient**.

| GLOSSARY | |
|-----------------------|---|
| mixed feelings | both positive (+) and negative (-) feelings about sth |
| pleasant | (of a place) nice, attractive |
| artificial | made by people and used instead of sth natural OPP real OR natural |
| modern | of the present time OPP old-fashioned |
| effective | successful and giving the result you want OPP ineffective |
| temporary | only continuing for a short time OPP permanent |
| public | free for anybody to use OPP private |
| pleased | happy about a particular event or situation OPP unhappy |
| unexpected | If sth is unexpected , it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP expected |
| convenient | near to a place or easy to get to OPP inconvenient |

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------|----------------|
| ▶ an old-fashioned | f | a worker |
| 1 mixed | ..... | b result |
| 2 a private | ..... | c party |
| 3 a temporary | ..... | d light |
| 4 an unexpected | ..... | e architecture |
| 5 natural | ..... | f dress |
| 6 modern | ..... | g feelings |

2 Replace the underlined adjective with an opposite.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------|---|-------|
| ▶ I had <u>negative</u> feelings. | <u>positive</u> | 4 Is that <u>real</u> snow? | ..... |
| 1 They had <u>old-fashioned</u> furniture. | ..... | 5 We were <u>unhappy</u> with the meal. | ..... |
| 2 It's a really <u>convenient</u> location. | ..... | 6 It was an <u>effective</u> method. | ..... |
| 3 I wanted to meet in a <u>private</u> place. | ..... | 7 The visit was <u>expected</u>. | ..... |
| | | 8 It's a <u>temporary</u> arrangement. | ..... |

3 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

- ▶ She's only a temporary member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.
- I have feelings about working abroad: part of me wants to, but I'd miss my family.
 - The doctor gave me tablets for the pain, but they weren't very My back still hurts.
 - I was very with the decorators. They did a great job.
 - She wears clothes that make her look like something from the 1990s – they're very old
 - My sister's going to have a baby. It was completely, but we're all very happy about it.
 - My flat is very for the station – it's only a five-minute walk away.
 - A lot of people don't like art because they don't understand it.
 - Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite
 - I had a temporary contract, but they've made it now, which is good.
 - My son hasn't worked hard so he isn't to pass the exam.



B Pairs of opposites

TELL US ABOUT YOU AND YOUR OPINIONS!

- Do you like books or films about **imaginary** worlds?
- Do you prefer wearing **baggy** jeans or **tight** jeans?
- Do you prefer **indoor** swimming pools or **outdoor** pools?
- Do you own anything which is **rare**?
- When you drive somewhere, do you always look for the most **direct** route?
- In English law, you are **innocent** until proven **guilty**. Do you agree with that idea?
- Is it always good to be a **careful** driver?
- What's the most **useful** piece of advice anyone has given you?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------|---|
| imaginary | not real; only in your mind OPP real |
| baggy | If clothes are baggy , they are big and loose. OPP tight |
| indoor | done or used inside a building OPP outdoor |
| rare | If sth is rare , you do not find or see it often. OPP common |
| direct | as straight as possible, without turning or stopping OPP indirect |
| innocent | If you are innocent , you have not done anything wrong. OPP guilty |
| careful | thinking about what you are doing so that you do not make a mistake or have an accident OPP careless |
| useful | good and helpful for doing sth OPP useless |

SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in -ful and -less

Some adjectives are formed by adding *-ful* to the noun, with the meaning 'full of' or 'having a lot of', e.g. **careful, useful, painful, powerful**. The opposite is sometimes formed by adding *-less* (= without) to the noun, e.g. **careless, useless, powerless** and **painless**. This is not always true, e.g. **wonderful** (NOT **wonderless**).

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ baggy / <u>imaginary</u> D | 4 <u>powerful</u> / <u>wonderful</u> |
| 1 <u>careful</u> / <u>rare</u> | 5 <u>imaginary</u> / <u>innocent</u> |
| 2 <u>guilty</u> / <u>tight</u> | 6 <u>innocent</u> / <u>useless</u> |
| 3 <u>common</u> / <u>wonderful</u> | 7 <u>useful</u> / <u>careful</u> |

5 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ▶ We've got a real problem. B | 4 This tin opener is useless. |
| 1 He's got a rare illness. | 5 They found her innocent. |
| 2 The injection was painless. | 6 They found her guilty. |
| 3 It's a direct route. | 7 The book was useful. |

6 Replace the underlined word with an opposite.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ an <u>indoor</u> game <u>an outdoor game</u> | 4 a <u>powerful</u> group |
| 1 a <u>tight</u> shirt | 5 <u>real</u> people in a book |
| 2 a <u>common</u> mistake | 6 a <u>careless</u> driver |
| 3 a <u>direct</u> route | 7 an <u>innocent</u> man |

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Will is a common name these days. I know lots of people called Will.
- 1 Mika needs to check his work more: he makes lots of mistakes.
 - 2 This belt is very : it's difficult to breathe.
 - 3 The teacher said that George stole the pen, but George says he's
 - 4 It's not a very cold climate, so it's to have temperatures below zero degrees.
 - 5 I want to take a train so that I get there as quickly as possible.
 - 6 They found him of several crimes. He'll be in prison for four years.

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Yes, I do - especially films, such as The Shape of Water.



21 Adverbs (1): degree and frequency

A Some other ways of saying 'very'

All the adverbs underlined below mean 'very', 'very much' or 'a lot'. They are used with particular adjectives or verbs.

Jack was seriously injured in a car accident.

It's highly unlikely the boys will get here on time – they're nearly always late.

The children were terribly sorry they couldn't come to the party.

It's vitaly important to revise vocabulary you learn – otherwise you forget it.

I love Lucy, but she's completely mad.

This author's first book was totally different to this one.

I strongly believe that political party is wrong about immigration.

I absolutely love Chinese food.

My boss has travelled widely in Asia.

Prices have risen sharply in the last year.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| seriously | badly and in a serious way: seriously injured/ill/damaged |
| injured | If you are injured , your body is hurt, often from an accident. |
| highly | very, very much: highly likely/unlikely |
| unlikely | If sth is unlikely , it probably will not happen. OPP likely |
| terribly | very: terribly sad/sorry |
| vitaly | extremely: vitaly important |
| mad inf | stupid, but sometimes in a funny way SYN crazy |
| strongly | in a way that shows serious opinions: strongly believe; feel strongly |
| widely | in or to a lot of places: travel widely |
| rise pt rose pp risen | go up; increase |
| sharply | suddenly and by a lot: rise/fall sharply |

SPOTLIGHT *completely, absolutely, totally*

Completely, absolutely and totally are used with a range of ungradable adjectives (see Unit 19).

- **completely/absolutely/totally unnecessary/sure**
- **I completely/absolutely/totally agree/understand.**

Sometimes we use **completely/totally** with certain adjectives, but not **absolutely**.

- **completely/totally wrong/different** (NOT **absolutely wrong/different**)

1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence.

- ▶ It's / important to go. vitaly/terribly/highly
- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1 He's been ill. | 5 He's likely to move to another city. |
| 2 I love his new musical. | 6 It's a sad film. |
| 3 That man is mad. | 7 It was unnecessary to do that. |
| 4 I feel we should change. | 8 My gas bill has risen. |

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ I absolutely love the music you hear in the street.
- 1 I think he's right. I completely with him.
 - 2 Smoking can seriously your health.
 - 3 I'm terribly I completely to bring my homework.
 - 4 He widely when he was in South America.
 - 5 We both strongly that the government should change its policy on forests.
 - 6 I'm not totally that he knows what he's doing with that camera.
 - 7 They're highly to be on holiday now – it's a normal working week.
 - 8 My bag has completely Have you seen it anywhere?
 - 9 The price of printing has sharply – that's fantastic news.

3 Replace very with a different adverb in each sentence.

- ▶ She's very sorry about the mistake. terribly
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 A good dictionary is <u>very</u> important. | 4 It used to be quiet round here, but it's <u>very</u> different now. |
| 2 It's <u>very</u> unlikely that he'll come. | 5 A bigger flat is <u>very</u> unnecessary. |
| 3 He's been <u>very</u> ill. | 6 That story of the missing girl is <u>very</u> sad. |

TEST YOURSELF

B Frequency and degree

- Axel** Do you and Mac still go to concerts **regularly**?
- Harry** No, we **rarely** see each other these days. The last time was **roughly** a year ago.
- Axel** Oh. Why's that?
- Harry** I **mainly** get about by bike, and that's too far to cycle.
- Axel** But you still go to concerts, don't you?
- Harry** No, not so **frequently** – I think I'm getting **slightly** old for rock concerts. **Generally**, I listen to music at home now.
- Axel** Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?
- Harry** No, not really. I find the noise and hysteria **rather** annoying, actually.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| regularly | happening quite often, with the same amount of space or time in between |
| rarely | not often SYN seldom |
| roughly | about, not exactly SYN approximately |
| mainly | mostly |
| frequently | often |
| slightly | a little SYN a little bit |
| generally | usually, most of the time SYN on the whole |

SPOTLIGHT *quite, fairly, rather, pretty*

These words all mean 'not very; to a certain degree'. **Pretty** is more informal.

- It's **quite** warm today.
- He's **fairly/rather** lazy.
- The film was **pretty** good.

If you use **rather** with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased.

- It's a very cheap restaurant, but the food is **rather** good.

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ The town is mostly industrial. / The town is mainly industrial. S
- 1 They rarely work at weekends. / They regularly work at weekends.
- 2 Generally, it's very quiet here. / On the whole, it's very quiet here.
- 3 He's slightly ill. / He's seldom ill.
- 4 They seldom work late. / They rarely work late.
- 5 There were roughly 40. / There were generally 40.
- 6 The book was rather good. / The book was pretty good.

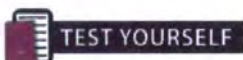
5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- ▶ I go to the gym regularly. quite often
- 1 Generally, I walk into town if the weather's nice.
- 2 The students were mostly Italian.
- 3 There were roughly 30 people at the party.
- 4 The dictionary was quite useful.
- 5 We seldom go out during the week.
- 6 My family often get together for a meal.
- 7 I expected your sister to be short, but actually she's quite tall.
- 8 On the whole, the weather was quite good.

6 Cover the sentences in Exercises 5 and look at your answers. Write a synonym for each of your answers, then look at the sentences to see if you're right.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Something that you do frequently. *I frequently go for a long walk on Sunday morning.*
- 1 Something that is generally true for you.
- 2 Something that you rarely do now, but often did in the past.
- 3 Something that you do regularly.
- 4 Something you have seen or read recently that was pretty good.
- 5 Something that you have seen or read recently that was fairly boring.
- 6 Something that you find slightly annoying.



22 Adverbs (2): emphasizing and manner

A Emphasizing

I hate being at home all the time, **especially** in winter, so **naturally**, I was really pleased when a couple of friends suggested a trip to the Canary Islands in December. It's **obviously** an expensive time to go there when the weather is so good, but **actually**, we managed to find a cheap flight and a hotel in our price range that was **perfectly** acceptable. I **specifically** asked for a room with a sea view, so I was disappointed to find myself in a dark room at the back. **Eventually**, they found me a room with a balcony. I heard later that they **simply** offered another guest a big discount if he would move, which rather embarrassed me. I had a good time, though: I **hardly** moved from the beach all week. I would recommend the area for a great winter break, but **not necessarily** that hotel.

Send

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| especially | more than usual or more than others SYN particularly |
| naturally | in a way that you expect SYN of course |
| obviously | in a way that is easy to see or understand SYN clearly |
| actually | a word you use to introduce a surprising fact SYN in (actual) fact |
| perfectly | completely |
| specifically | If you ask specifically for sth, you want one particular thing and not any others: <i>I specifically asked him to get brown bread, not white bread.</i> |
| eventually | after a long time, and often after some difficulty |
| simply | a word you use when you want to show how easy sth is; just |
| hardly | almost not; only just |
| not necessarily | possibly but not definitely or always true |

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ They were perfectly happy. / They were eventually happy. **D**
- 1 He was obviously keen to go. / He was clearly keen to go.
- 2 The food was actually quite good. / The food was naturally quite good.
- 3 The house is actually very nice. / In fact, the house is very nice.
- 4 The food was good, especially the fish. / The food was good, particularly the fish.
- 5 We eventually waited for them. / We specifically waited for them.
- 6 We hardly left the building. / We eventually left the building.
- 7 Naturally, everyone spoke English. / Of course, everyone spoke English.
- 8 You simply add sugar. / You obviously add sugar.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ It's easy to get cheap tickets: you **simply** need to book a month before you travel.
- 1 It took us about two hours, but we found the place.
- 2 Is it always busy? ~ Not It can be very quiet sometimes.
- 3 We loved all the animals we saw, but the elephants.
- 4 It was a very long day, so we were pretty tired by the end of it.
- 5 They told us entry was free, but we had to pay £10 each.
- 6 I asked the waiter if there were any nuts in the food because I have an allergy.
- 7 You don't look well. Are you OK? ~ Yes, I'm all right.
- 8 Maria is doing well. Last year she could speak a word of English.

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- ▶ We hadn't eaten all day, so naturally **we were very hungry**
- 1 Marie was an hour late, so obviously I
- 2 He said he'd bought the car this year, but in actual fact he
- 3 I enjoy most Olympic sports, but especially
- 4 They said it was a ten-minute walk, but actually
- 5 With the snow in my face I could hardly
- 6 Ethan and Ed were a couple of hours late, but eventually
- 7 It's easy to get drinks from the machine. You simply



TEST YOURSELF

B Manner



He shouted at me **angrily** when I refused to move my car.
 My parents are **happily** married.
 Ollie's horse died **suddenly**, so we were all quite shocked.
 When we left the house, it was raining **heavily**.
 He spoke very **calmly** about his wartime experience, which was surprising.
 The new marketing team are now working quite **effectively**.
 She speaks very **clearly**, so I can understand most of what she says.
 The photocopier isn't working **properly** – I must speak to the engineer.
 Sofia completed her studies **successfully**. Now she wants a good job.
 Brad always asks very **politely** if he wants something.
 The meeting was **badly** organized.
 They did everything very **secretly**, so nobody knew about it.

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Some adverbs tell you how something happens. They are often formed from the related adjective *-ly*.

polite/politely bad/badly angry/angrily

They usually go after a verb, but can go before past participles.

- I **drove** *carefully*.
- She **spoke** *quietly*.
- The food was **well** *cooked*.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| suddenly | quickly and when you do not expect it |
| heavily | a lot |
| calmly | in a way that shows you are not excited, nervous or upset |
| effectively | in a way that gives a positive result |
| clearly | in a way that is easy to see, hear or understand |
| properly | well or correctly |
| successfully | having got or done what you wanted |
| secretly | without other people knowing SYN in secret |

4 Yes or No?

- ▶ If somebody asks you a question politely, are you pleased? Yes
- 1 If it rains heavily and you haven't got an umbrella, are you pleased?
- 2 If something works effectively, are you angry?
- 3 If something happens suddenly, are you surprised?
- 4 If you do something successfully, are you pleased?
- 5 If you respond angrily, are you happy?
- 6 If something works properly, are you pleased?
- 7 If you do something secretly, do other people know about it?
- 8 If you hear something clearly, do you hear it well?

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable adverb.

- ▶ When I was a child, we lived happily without mobile phones.
- 1 It was raining when we left the cinema.
- 2 The storm was a shock because it started so
- 3 Remember to speak so people can hear you and understand what you're saying.
- 4 They've got a new system, and it's working very, which is great.
- 5 It's incredible. My brother can carry on working when people around him are shouting.
- 6 He spoke very when he was leaving the room – he was so annoyed with his colleagues.
- 7 They organized the party, so it was a big surprise for their father.
- 8 That radio hasn't worked for ages: there's a buzzing noise all the time.
- 9 There was ice on the road so mum drove very
- 10 My essay was so written that my teacher told me to do it again.

TEST YOURSELF

23

Fruit, vegetables and herbs

fruit



(a bunch of) grapes



melon



pineapple



mango



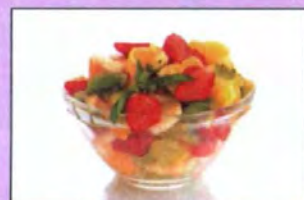
(a bunch of) cherries



watermelon



pear



fruit salad

vegetables, salad and herbs



cabbage



sweetcorn

lettuce



frozen

mixed vegetables
(fresh or frozen)



garlic



courgette



cucumber



mint



green beans
(ALSO French beans)



red pepper



broccoli



parsley

Mint and parsley are herbs.

1 Cover the pictures. Tick the items that are usually green on the outside.

- | | | | |
|---|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| ▶ parsley <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 lettuce | 6 watermelon | 9 sweetcorn |
| 1 cherries | 4 garlic | 7 cucumber | 10 mint |
| 2 green beans | 5 broccoli | 8 cabbage | 11 mango |

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| ▶ fruit salad / <u>c</u> ourgette D | 4 mel <u>o</u> n / sweetcorn | 8 pear / <u>h</u> erbs |
| 1 cab <u>b</u> age / gar <u>l</u> ic | 5 mang <u>o</u> / brocc <u>o</u> li | 9 be <u>a</u> ns / swee <u>t</u> corn |
| 2 lett <u>u</u> ce / cu <u>c</u> umber | 6 pars <u>l</u> ey / gar <u>l</u> ic | 10 pineapp <u>l</u> e / mix <u>e</u> d vegetab <u>l</u> es |
| 3 cu <u>c</u> umber / bu <u>n</u> ch | 7 cour <u>g</u> ette / vegetab <u>l</u> e | 11 froz <u>e</u> n / mang <u>o</u> |

3 Circle the odd one out in each group. Write why they are different.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| ▶ a) peach | b) watermelon | c) <u>mint</u> | d) pineapple | <u>A, b and d are types of fruit.</u> |
| 1 a) red pepper | b) broccoli | c) lettuce | d) pear | ..... |
| 2 a) garlic | b) melon | c) grapes | d) fruit salad | ..... |
| 3 a) cabbage | b) green beans | c) parsley | d) cucumber | ..... |
| 4 a) sweetcorn | b) herbs | c) courgette | d) cabbage | ..... |
| 5 a) mango | b) pineapple | c) bunch | d) cherries | ..... |

4 Cover page 56 and complete the words.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| ▶ p <u>a</u> r <u>s</u> l <u>e</u> y | 6 p _____ a _____ e | 12 c _____ rr _____ s |
| 1 m _____ n | 7 l _____ tt <u>گروه آموزشی دانش بند</u> | 13 p _____ rs |
| 2 c _____ a _____ e | 8 g _____ n b _____ s | 14 g _____ l _____ c |
| 3 w _____ term _____ l _____ n | 9 m _____ g _____ | 15 r _____ d p _____ r |
| 4 g _____ p _____ s | 10 c _____ rg _____ e | 16 c _____ c _____ m _____ |
| 5 br _____ c _____ l _____ | 11 s _____ tc _____ | |

5 Write the words in Exercise 4 in the correct column.

| FRUIT | VEGETABLES |
|-------|------------|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

6 Which of the words in the table do people usually eat with their fingers?

- ▶ pear

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you like these foods? If so, how often do you eat them?

- grapes Yes, I like grapes and eat them a lot in the summer.
- mint No, I don't like mint, and I never add it to anything I eat.
- mixed vegetables _____ fruit salad _____
- courgettes _____ pears _____
- watermelon _____ sweetcorn _____
- garlic _____ mango _____
- parsley _____ frozen green beans _____
- cherries _____

A Containers



a tin of crab



a can of fizzy drink



a packet of peanuts



a packet of cocoa powder



a jar of honey



a carton of juice



a vase of flowers



a basket of fruit



a tube of glue

GLOSSARY

container a thing you can put other things in, e.g. a packet, a tin
contain v: The packet **contains** Italian biscuits.
fizzy (of a drink) containing many small **bubbles** (= balls of air or gas). A **fizzy drink** is a non-alcoholic sweet drink with bubbles in it.
powder a dry substance like flour that is made of very small pieces: **soap powder, chilli powder**
cocoa a dark brown powder made from cocoa beans and used for making chocolate

SPOTLIGHT *tin and can*

In British English, we usually say **tin** when there is food inside, and we say **can** if it contains liquid (water, drinks, etc.).

- a **tin** of tuna/beans
- a **can** of cola/beer

1 Study the pictures for one minute, then cover them. Did you see these things? Write Yes or No.

- | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------|---------------------|-------|------------------------|-------|
| ▶ a jar of peanuts | no | ▶ a carton of juice | yes | 7 a can of cola | ..... |
| 1 a tin of beans | ..... | 4 a jar of jam | ..... | 8 a vase of flowers | ..... |
| 2 a fizzy drink can | ..... | 5 a tube of glue | ..... | 9 some containers | ..... |
| 3 a packet of soap powder | ..... | 6 a tin of crab | ..... | 10 a basket of oranges | ..... |

2 True or false? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ A jar is made of metal. F - It is made of glass. | 4 Peanuts are kinds of containers. |
| 1 Bees make honey. | 5 You put apples in a vase. |
| 2 A carton can contain liquids. | 6 A tin usually contains food. |
| 3 A fizzy drink doesn't contain bubbles. | 7 You can eat soap powder. |

3 Put the items in the correct column below. Some words can go in more than one column.

coffee ✓ beer milk tomatoes a fizzy drink crisps peanuts olives
 toothpaste jam fruit juice tuna cola chilli powder glue flowers

| CAN | TIN | CARTON | JAR | TUBE | PACKET | VASE |
|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|----------|-------|
| | | | | | ▶ coffee | ..... |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

4 Complete the shopping list.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ a tin of crab | a large of crisps |
| a of milk (1 litre) | a of fizzy |
| two of tuna | a of cola |
| a of cocoa | a of peanuts |
| a of toothpaste | a of glue |
| a of raspberry jam | |

TEST YOURSELF

B Quantities



a slice of bread



a loaf of bread



a roll



a spoonful of sugar



two sheets of paper



a couple of pens



several biscuits



a small quantity of oil



I measured the material. I needed **approximately** 2m (= metres), and it was **more or less** the right length. It measured 1.95 m.



I weighed the rice. I needed the **exact** amount. It weighed 404g. (= grams)

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| several | more than two, but not many |
| quantity | how much of sth that there is SYN amount |
| approximately | about, not exactly SYN more or less; approximate adj |
| exact | correct, accurate exactly adv |
| length | how long sth is |

SPOTLIGHT transitive and intransitive verbs

- Measure** and **weigh** can be used transitively (= with an object) or intransitively (= without an object).
- *She **measured** the bed.* = She used a ruler to find out the size of the bed.
 - *It **measured** 2 m by 1 m.* = The size of the bed was ...
 - *I **weighed** the baby.* = I measured the baby to see how heavy it was. **گروه اموز**
 - *The baby **weighed** 8 kg.* = The baby's weight was ...

5 Find the end of each word or phrase.

roll / several amount weigh length approximate loaf exactly a couple of more or less

6 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ I bought several rolls. / I bought a few rolls. S
- 1 Did you measure yourself? / Did you weigh yourself?
- 2 I need two sheets of paper. / I need a couple of sheets of paper.
- 3 The picture measures 20 cm by 30cm. / The picture is 20 cm long and 30 cm wide.
- 4 We had a roll for lunch. / We had a slice of bread for lunch.
- 5 That car weighs exactly 2,000 kg. / That car weighs approximately 2,000 kg.
- 6 They had a large amount of money. / They had a large quantity of money.

7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ Could you let me have a / of paper? sheet
- 1 The room approximately 4 metres by 3 metres.
- 2 I only take one of sugar in my coffee, thanks.
- 3 Sergio Aguero is 1.7 m tall, or less.
- 4 There are a of men standing outside. Oh, it's Yusuf and Omer!
- 5 He had a sandwich with two of ham in it and a tomato.
- 6 Could you buy a small of bread at the supermarket? Thanks.
- 7 We only need a small of butter to make this cake.
- 8 The height of Burg Khalifa in Dubai is 828 m – no more and no less.
- 9 I think there were 30 people at the meeting, but I didn't count them.
- 10 What is the of an Olympic swimming pool? ~ I think it's 50 m.



TEST YOURSELF

25 Cooking

A Advice for cooks

- **Recipes** aren't always perfect, but the most important thing is to have good **ingredients** and **plenty of flavour**.
- Develop your **skills** and learn to **slice** vegetables in the **proper** way. Always **invest in** good quality knives, and keep them **sharp**.
- You **have a responsibility** to look after people who are **dieting** to **lose weight**, or who **are on a special diet**.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| recipe | a set of instructions that tells you how to cook sth |
| ingredient | one of the items of food you need to make sth to eat |
| plenty of sth | a large amount; as much of sth as you need |
| flavour | how food or drink tastes |
| skill | the ability to do sth well, especially when you have practised it |
| slice | cut meat, vegetables, bread, etc. into thin, flat pieces |
| proper | right, suitable or correct |
| invest in sth | buy sth, especially sth that you will need and use a lot |
| sharp | with an edge or point that cuts or makes holes easily OPP blunt |
| responsibility | sth that you must do to look after sb or sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong |

SPOTLIGHT *diet*

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet**, **go on a diet** or **are on a diet**, which means eating less to **lose weight**.

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| ▶ a sharp knife <u>G</u> | 3 blunt scissors | 6 not much flavour |
| 1 a balanced diet | 4 you have skills | 7 fresh ingredients |
| 2 plenty of water | 5 the proper knife for the job | 8 a sharp pencil |

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase from the box.

| | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------|
| have a responsibility to flavour | sliced ✓ a recipe | invest in skills | lose weight go on a diet | proper |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|--------|

- ▶ The bread was cut into thin pieces. sliced
- 1 If you want to get thinner, don't eat sugar. _____
- 2 I'll make a lasagne, but I need cooking instructions. _____
- 3 You'll need a frying pan, so buy yourself a good one. _____
- 4 As a parent, you have to feed your children healthily. _____
- 5 Do you know how to slice salmon in the correct way? _____
- 6 Do you have the ability and knowledge to cook in a restaurant? _____
- 7 I'm going to stop eating food that makes me fat _____
- 8 I don't like the taste of this sauce. _____

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ I think diets are a very bad idea.
- 1 You need great cooking _____ to work in a local family restaurant.
- 2 It's very important to cook chicken _____, or it can be bad for you.
- 3 I use a lot of _____ when I'm cooking.
- 4 I don't usually use a _____ - I prefer to cook my own way.
- 5 I eat a very balanced _____ with a lot of fresh food.
- 6 I drink _____ of water. It's good for you.
- 7 I like food with a strong _____.

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Are sentences 3-7 in Exercise 3 true for you? Write Yes or No, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Cooking

Recipe for Cottage pie



Ingredients

300g **minced**¹ beef
 300g potatoes
 1 large onion
 1 carrot
 2-3 chopped tomatoes
 300 ml beef **stock**
 1 large spoonful of **flour**
 butter, salt and pepper

Method

First **boil** the potatoes in a **pan**² until just cooked. **Mash** them with butter. **Chop** the onion and carrot. Then, **fry**³ the meat quickly **along with** the vegetables, **add** the flour and cook for a minute.
 Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes.
 Put it in a large dish and cover with the mashed potato and some butter. **Bake**⁴ in a hot oven for 20 minutes.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| stock | water with added flavour of meat, fish or vegetables |
| flour | a soft white or brown powder used in making bread, cakes, etc. |
| method | a way of doing sth |
| boil | cook sth in water, usually in a pan/saucepan ² |
| mash | press and mix food to make it soft |
| chop | cut sth, e.g. onions, carrots, etc. into pieces with a knife chopped <i>adj</i> |
| fry | cook sth in oil, usually in a frying pan ³ |
| along with sth | in addition to sth SYN together with sth |
| add | put sth together with sth else |
| bake | cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = roast) |

5 Which word is being defined?

- ▶ use a machine to cut meat into very small pieces
- 1 cut into many pieces
- 2 put something with another thing
- 3 press and mix until soft and smooth
- 4 cook in water

mince

5 cook in the oven without oil or fat

6 cook in the oven with oil or fat

7 a liquid with added flavour used in soups

8 a container that you boil food in

9 a way of doing something

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

I made a lovely fish soup the other day. First, I made some ▶ **stock** with fish bones. I (1) **c** some tomatoes and peppers, and then (2) **f** some onions, along (3) **w** some garlic in a little olive oil. I put all this (4) **t** with the stock in a big (5) **p**. I then (6) **a** salt and pepper and cooked it gently for half an hour – you mustn't let it (7) **b**. Finally, I put some pieces of fish in the (8) **f** pan and cooked them for a couple of minutes, then put these in the soup. Delicious!

This is a very simple (9) **m** of making a pasta sauce using (10) **m** beef, onions, garlic and tomatoes. Put some oil in a large (11) **s** and (12) **f** the beef until it's brown. Move it to another dish while you cook the vegetables. Finally, put it all together and add some (13) **s** and wine. Cook it slowly for about 45 minutes.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Complete with food that is typical in your country.

- 1 minced beef, lamb, pork
- 2 fried
- 3 roast
- 4 boiled
- 5 baked
- 6 mashed



26 Shopping

A Spending habits

YOUR SPENDING HABITS

- Do you usually try to buy **goods** that are **reduced** in price?
- If there is something wrong with the goods, do you ask for a **discount**?
- Do people who sell goods in markets ever **charge** you too much money?
- Do you ever buy **used** goods online?
- Have you ever **placed an order** for anything very **valuable** online?
- Do you ever feel that what you have bought is not **worth** the money you paid?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| goods <i>pl</i> | things that you buy and sell |
| reduce | make sth less or smaller in quantity, price, size, etc: reduce the price of sth |
| discount | money that sb takes off the price of sth to make it cheaper: get/ask for a discount |
| charge (sb for sth) | ask sb to pay a certain price for sth charge n |
| used | sth that has belonged to another person before SYN second-hand |
| order | a request asking for sth to be sent: place an order; order v |
| valuable | worth a lot of money value n; What's the value of that ring? |

SPOTLIGHT *worth*

- 1 having a particular value:
The ring cost £200, but in fact it's worth £2,000.
- 2 used as a way of recommending or advising.
Worth is usually followed by a noun or an -ing form:
The local market is worth a visit.
It's not worth asking Anna for money; she hasn't got any.

1 In each sentence, one word is missing, or there is one word too many. Correct them.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ He charged me / the petrol. <u>for</u> | ▶ I got for a discount. |
| 1 What the watch worth? | 6 I ordered to some new glasses. |
| 2 They reduced down the price. | 7 We asked a discount. |
| 3 We placed order for a new car. | 8 Is the market worth to seeing? |
| 4 Did she charge to you for the coffee? | 9 There was no for drinks: they were free. |
| 5 I bought a second-of-hand car. | |

2 Rewrite the questions using the words in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

- | | | |
|--|----------|---|
| ▶ What's the car worth? | VALUE | What <u>'s the value of the car</u> |
| 1 Did you ask him to take some money off the coat? | REDUCE | Did |
| 2 Is the furniture worth a lot? | VALUABLE | Is |
| 3 Were the things you bought expensive? | GOODS | Were |
| 4 Is the car second-hand? | USED | Is it |
| 5 Did you order the new printer this morning? | PLACE | Did you |
| 6 What's the value of Julio's flat? | WORTH | What |
| 7 Did they ask you to pay for the repairs? | CHARGE | Did |
| 8 Did the shop assistant bring the price down? | DISCOUNT | Did |

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Making complaints

I had to **make a complaint** last week about a kitchen **gadget** that I bought in town. When I got home it didn't **work** properly, so I **took it back** to the shop and asked for a **refund**. As I didn't have the **receipt**, the manager refused, but said that he would **exchange** it for another one.

I ordered a **set** of glasses online, but when the **package** was **delivered**, two of the glasses were broken. I **sent them back** and the company sent me a new set immediately.

SPOTLIGHT *take/send something back*

take sth back return to a shop with sth because you are not happy with it:

■ I'm going to **take** these shoes **back** to the shop. They're uncomfortable.

send sth back return sth by post because you are not happy with it:

■ She **sent** the shirt **back** to the seller and asked for a refund.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| complaint | When you make a complaint , you say that you do not like sth or are not happy with it. complain v |
| gadget | a small machine or useful tool |
| work | If a machine works , it goes correctly or does what it should do. |
| refund | money that is paid back to you because you are not happy with the goods you bought, or you have paid too much refund v |
| receipt | a piece of paper or an electronic document that shows you have paid for sth |
| exchange sth (for sth) | give one thing and get another thing for it |
| set | a group of things of the same kind that belong together: a set of keys |
| package | sth that is wrapped in paper, cardboard or plastic parcel |
| deliver | take goods, letters, etc. to the person they have been sent to |

4 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ I made a **complain** / **complain** in the market about the quality of the fruit.
- The computer keyboard doesn't **deliver** / **work** very well.
 - When did they deliver the **receipt** / **package**?
 - The shop is quite near here, so I'll **take** / **send** the phone back.
 - I had to **complain** / **complaint** about the service. It was terrible.
 - The postman **refunded** / **delivered** the parcel this morning.
 - Leo's got a complete **parcel** / **set** of Harry Potter books – all seven of them.
 - The customer **exchanged** / **complained about** the goods.
 - This **gadget** / **parcel** doesn't work very well. I'll have to send it back.

5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Can you prove you bought the jeans there? ~ No, I haven't got a **receipt**
- Has the postman come with your parcel yet? ~ Yes, it was this morning.
 - Are there six knives and forks in the box? ~ Yes, it's a complete
 - What does Molly want for her birthday? ~ Oh, some electronic for editing photos.
 - Could you turn the heater on, please? ~ I'm sorry, it isn't
 - Did you say you were unhappy with the service? ~ Yes, actually I've made a
 - Did you return the package to the seller? ~ Yes, I've
 - Did you ask for your money back? ~ I did, and the seller has given me a
 - Did you take the jeans back to the shop? ~ Yes, and they them for a bigger size.

6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. If false, change the sentences to make them true for you.

- ▶ Some of my gadgets don't work properly. **F – I only have a few gadgets and they work OK.**
- I've never made a complaint in a shop.
 - I always take goods back if I'm not happy with them.
 - I've got a lot of gadgets, but they aren't always useful.
 - I always lose receipts when I buy things.
 - I don't like having to ask for a refund.
 - If I buy something online, it's always delivered very quickly.



TEST YOURSELF

27 Clothing



Gabby's dressed in casual clothes.

- 1 cap
- 2 patterned top
pattern *n*
- 3 wool/woollen jacket
- 4 denim skirt
- 5 coloured tights



Sarah's got earrings on.

- 6 earrings
- 7 a striped cotton blouse
stripe *n*
- 8 necklace
- 9 fur jacket
- 10 baggy trousers



Logan's got gloves on.

- 11 a plain shirt
- 12 raincoat
- 13 gloves
- 14 tight jeans



underwear [U]:

1 bra

2 knickers *pl*

3 underpants *pl* /
pants *pl inf*

4 vest

SPOTLIGHT getting dressed and wearing clothes

have/have got sth on be wearing sth:

- Gabby **has / has got a cap on**.

be dressed (in sth) wearing clothes of a particular type or colour:

- Sarah's **dressed in brown**.

get dressed put your clothes on:

- Sarah **got dressed** quickly this morning. OPP **get undressed**

do sth up fasten a jacket, blouse, etc.:

- Sarah **did her blouse up**. OPP **undo sth**

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | | | |
|--|----------|---------------------------------------|-------|--|-------|
| ▶ und <u>o</u> / wo <u>o</u> l | <u>D</u> | 3 gloves / col <u>o</u> ured | ..... | 6 kn <u>i</u> ck <u>e</u> rs / ne <u>ck</u> lace | ..... |
| 1 e <u>ar</u> rings / under <u>we</u> ar | ..... | 4 pl <u>a</u> in / pat <u>te</u> rned | ..... | 7 fu <u>r</u> / under <u>pa</u> nts | ..... |
| 2 t <u>i</u> ght / str <u>i</u> pe | ..... | 5 pa <u>n</u> ts / br <u>a</u> | ..... |  |  |

2 Complete the words.

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| ▶ kn <u>i</u> <u>ck</u> <u>e</u> <u>r</u> <u>s</u> | 4 bl <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>se</u> | 8 r <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>nc</u> <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>t</u> |
| 1 <u> </u> <u>nd</u> <u> </u> <u>rw</u> <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>r</u> | 5 pa <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>er</u> <u> </u> | 9 pl <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>n</u> |
| 2 ti <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>ts</u> | 6 w <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>l</u> | 10 ba <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>y</u> |
| 3 d <u> </u> <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>m</u> | 7 v <u> </u> <u> </u> <u>t</u> | |

3 Cover the words on page 64 and look at the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

If false, correct the sentences.

- ▶ Gabby's wearing earrings. **F - Sarah's wearing earrings.**
- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Logan's got a cap on. | 6 Logan's dressed in jeans and a raincoat. |
| 2 Gabby's dressed in coloured tights. | 7 Sarah's dressed in tight trousers. |
| 3 Sarah's wearing a blouse with stripes on. | 8 Logan's wearing a plain shirt. |
| 4 Gabby's got a patterned woollen jacket on. | 9 Sarah's wearing a necklace. |
| 5 Gabby's wearing denim jeans. | 10 Sarah's got a fur jacket on. |

4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You can have a fur or a wool jacket. گروه آموزشی
- If it's wet outside, you will need to put your on.
 - Trousers can be tight or .
 - Tights can be black, skin colour or .
 - You can do your jacket up or it.
 - You can take your clothes off or .
 - A blouse can be (with no design), or (e.g.).
 - If you gloves on, it means you're wearing them.
 - If you're in white, it means you're wearing white.
 - A woman usually wears a and under her clothes, and sometimes a .
 - A man usually wears under his trousers, and if it's cold, he might have a on.

5 Complete the questions with words from the box.

| | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| underwear | denim | tight | necklace | woollen | cap ✓ |
| raincoat | undressed | earrings | fur | plain | dressed |

ABOUT YOU

- ▶ Do you ever wear a cap? If so, when and why?
- In the spring, do you wear cotton or jumpers?
 - When you get in the morning, what do you put on first?
 - Do you prefer baggy jeans or jeans?
 - How many pairs of jeans have you got?
 - Where you do buy your (e.g. knickers or pants)?
 - Have you ever owned a jacket or coat?
 - Are you wearing any jewellery today, e.g. a or ?
 - Is it wet enough in your country to wear a a lot?
 - Do you prefer patterned socks or socks?
 - When you get at night, what do you take off first?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

A Fashion advice

THREE GOLDEN RULES for fashion

Fashion experts say that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a set of a few **essential** items for every **occasion**. The main **elements** are: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, a leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, black skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what **suits** you and your body shape. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the essential items (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes. Buy good quality **brands** whenever you can.
- Choose safe colours: black, cream, white and dark blue. These look **smart**, and are easy to **match**.
- A simple **outfit** can be improved with the **latest** bags and accessories.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------|--|
| stylish | attractive and fashionable style <i>n</i> |
| essential | completely necessary |
| occasion | a time when sth happens; a special time |
| element | one important part of sth |
| suit | If something suits you, it looks good on you. |
| brand | one or more products sold under a particular name, e.g. Nike, Zara |
| smart | wearing clean, tidy and fashionable clothes |
| match | If one thing matches another, or if two things match , they are the same or similar, and look good together. |
| outfit | a set of clothes that you wear together |
| latest | new or very recent |

SPOTLIGHT *fashion and fashionable*

Fashion means a popular style of clothes or hair, at a particular time or place. Clothes can be **in fashion** (= popular now) or **out of fashion** (= unpopular now).

- Long skirts are **in fashion** now. Long hair has **gone out of fashion**.
- fashionable** *adj* **OPP** **unfashionable**

1 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ I don't like the style / *fashion* of these boots. They look very ugly.
- 1 You should buy that blouse – it **suits** / *matches* your skirt.
 - 2 She wore a very **fashionable** / *stylish* jacket but it looked awful.
 - 3 I need to get a new **element** / *outfit* for my brother's wedding.
 - 4 This coat is the latest **brand** / *fashion*, but I don't particularly like it.
 - 5 I think that dress really **matches** / *suits* you.
 - 6 A good pair of boots is an **essential** / *unfashionable* part of your capsule wardrobe.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Jamelia never wears red – it doesn't suit her.
- 1 I bought this sweater because it _____ my blue skirt.
 - 2 I'd love to be like Maria; she looks so _____ whatever she wears.
 - 3 I want a pair of those trousers – they're the _____ fashion.
 - 4 I need a new outfit for the ceremony. It's a very important _____.
 - 5 Is there a _____ of trainers that you usually wear? ~ Yes, Adidas.
 - 6 People used to wear big sunglasses, but they're _____ these days.
 - 7 What are the most important _____ of a capsule wardrobe?

3 Complete the sentence on the right so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

- ▶ Lou's birthday was a happy special day. Lou's birthday was a happy occasion.
- 1 This is an item I really need. This is an _____ item.
 - 2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes. Her bag _____ her shoes.
 - 3 People don't wear denim jackets now. Denim jackets are _____.
 - 4 These boots are the latest fashion. These boots are _____ at the moment.
 - 5 Her clothes are so attractive and fashionable. Her clothes are very _____.
 - 6 I need a new skirt and jacket for work. I need a new _____ for work.



TEST YOURSELF

B Attitudes to fashion

I don't understand why people buy such **poor quality** items of clothing, wear them a few times and then throw them away. It's terrible for the environment.

I hate the fashion **trade**. I read somewhere that companies can sell a dress for £5, but they don't make any **profit**. They're just **aiming to attract** more **consumers** to their websites so that they'll spend more money.

My brother's a fashion **designer**, but I think **designer labels** are a **waste of money**. I just shop in **high street** stores and I only buy **casual** clothes.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| poor quality | being cheap and not well made (NOT bad quality) OPP high/good quality |
| trade | a particular type of business: the fashion/building/tourist trade trade v |
| profit | money that you get when you sell sth for more than it costs to buy or make |
| aim to do sth | try or plan to do sth |
| attract | make sb/sth come to you or a particular place |
| consumer | a person who buys or uses sth |
| designer | sb whose job is to make drawings to show how sth will be made designer adj |
| label | a piece of paper attached to sth that gives information about it, e.g. the price, the designer's name: a designer label label v |
| a waste of money | a situation in which money is not spent in a good or useful way waste v |
| the high street | the main street in a town where most shops, banks, etc. are |
| casual | not formal |

4 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ profit

1 casual

2 designer

3 attract

4 quality

5 label

6 consumer

5 Complete the texts.

I know that I ▶ waste a lot of money on clothes, but I love going shopping in the (1) _____ street. I really love (2) _____ like Ralph Lauren and Tommy Hilfiger; I always try to buy good (3) _____ clothes that will last a long time. I have to wear smart outfits for work and even wear them at the weekend, so I don't really have any (4) _____ clothes, apart from a pair of jeans.

A British company selling trainers have made an enormous (5) _____ of over £90 million this year. They aim to (6) _____ more young people with special offers on big brands. I don't understand why these designer (7) _____ are so popular, though.

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ Giorgio Armani is my favourite fashion ▶ designer _____.

1 I don't wear formal outfits very often. I tend to wear _____ clothes.

2 I think _____ are changing their habits and spending less on clothes.

3 I always _____ to recycle clothes as much as possible.

4 A lot of clothes in the shops are very poor _____ these days.

5 The fashion _____ is very important to the economy of my country.

6 Expensive trainers are a waste of _____.

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 **ABOUT YOU** Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 6? Write your answers, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Symptoms



1 have a temperature



2 cough



3 a sore throat

The chemist asked me about my **symptoms**. I had a **high temperature**¹, as well as a **cough**² and a **sore throat**³, plus my neck was very **painful**.

I ate some fish which didn't taste good, and it gave me an **upset stomach**.

I went to see my doctor for a **check-up** because I felt extremely tired and **lacked energy**. **At times** I felt **confused**, and my husband thought I looked very **pale** too.

GLOSSARY

- symptom** sth that shows you have an illness
- check-up** a general examination by a doctor to see if you are healthy
- lack** If you **lack** sth, you have none, or you don't have enough of it. **lack n a lack of energy/time/money**
- at times** sometimes, but not often
- confused** not able to think clearly
- pale** with not much colour in your face, perhaps because you are ill
- an upset stomach** an illness in the stomach that makes you sick or needing to go to the toilet very often

SPOTLIGHT *sore and painful*

If a part of your body is **sore**, it hurts, especially because of infection or too much exercise.

- a **sore throat**
- *My feet are **sore** after walking all day.*

If something is **painful**, it hurts or gives you **pain**.
OPP **painless**.

- *My back was **painful**.* ■ *It was a **painful** injury.*

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| ▶ symptom / th <u>ink</u> S..... | 3 stomach / l <u>unch</u> | 6 cough / en <u>ough</u> |
| 1 thro <u>at</u> / c <u>on</u> fu <u>se</u> d | 4 p <u>a</u> le / p <u>ai</u> nful | 7 tem <u>per</u> ature / <u>ch</u> eck-u <u>p</u> |
| 2 <u>u</u> pset / <u>st</u> omach | 5 <u>s</u> ore / <u>d</u> oor | 8 thro <u>at</u> / <u>b</u> oard |

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Do you have a **big** / **high** temperature?
- 1 The little girl looked very **pale** / **painful**. I think she was quite ill.
- 2 I don't feel well if I have a **lack** / **lot** of sleep.
- 3 My grandfather's memory isn't so good, and he's often a bit **confused** / **painful**.
- 4 Most people feel tired and have no energy at **time** / **times**.
- 5 Some types of cheese can give me an **unhappy** / **upset** stomach.
- 6 People sometimes make a lot of noise when they have a **sore throat** / **cough**.
- 7 Danni spoke to the doctor about her **symptoms** / **energy**, such as feeling tired all the time.

3 Complete the words in the questions.

- ▶ Do you look **pale**..... if you are very cold?
- 1 Do you l..... energy early in the morning?
- 2 Do you know what the s..... of flu are?
- 3 Is any part of your body p..... at the moment?
- 4 Is there any kind of food that gives you an u..... stomach?
- 5 What do you do if you have a s..... throat?
- 6 If you have a high t....., what do you do about it?
- 7 When you've got a cold, do you often get a c..... as well?
- 8 Do you ever feel c..... when you wake up suddenly?
- 9 When did you last go for a c..... at the doctor's?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



B Injuries and emergencies



muscles



burn *n, v*
(*pt/pp burnt*)



trip (over)



bite *v, n*
(*pt bit pp bitten*)

Have you ever ...

injured a muscle¹ by doing too much exercise?

suffered from a serious burn²?

tripped over³ and broken a bone?

been bitten⁴ by a dog or cat?

accidentally eaten something poisonous?

had a bad reaction to milk or cheese?

had bleeding from your nose or ear?

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------------|--|------------------|---|
| injure | hurt yourself or sb else, especially in an accident injured <i>adj</i> injury <i>n</i> | poisonous | Something poisonous will make you very ill or kill you if you eat or drink it. poison <i>n, v</i> |
| suffer from sth | feel pain, sadness or another bad feeling in a way that was not planned or intended | reaction | If you have a reaction to sth you have eaten or drunk, it makes you ill. |
| accidentally | SYN by accident <i>I hit him by accident.</i> | bleeding | losing blood from your body bleed <i>v</i> (<i>pt/pp bled</i>) |

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You have muscles in your arms. T
- 1 A burn is a type of injury.
- 2 You can't suffer from a headache.
- 3 A bite is not painful.
- 4 You press hard on a bad cut to stop the bleeding.
- 5 People trip over by accident.
- 6 You can have a bad reaction to certain medicines.
- 7 Poison is good for you.
- 8 If you do something accidentally, you want to do it.

6 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ Julia had a very bad / to the drugs the doctor recommended. reaction
- 1 I over in the street and hurt my knees.
- 2 The boy was from a nasty cut on his arm.
- 3 Potatoes are when they go green, and they can make you ill.
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
- 5 My sister has from a serious illness all her life.
- 6 I was by a cat when I was young, so I don't go near them now.
- 7 I need to do exercises to make the in my arms stronger.
- 8 The fire started by and three people were badly burnt.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.



30 Hospital



X-ray



scan



operation



patient

Going into hospital

- You go to your doctor feeling very **unwell**.
 - She **examines** you, and **arranges** for you to see a **consultant**.
 - You may have **tests**, **X-rays**¹, or **scans**² and the nurses may take **blood samples**.
 - The consultant decides how to **treat** you.
 - You may **have an operation**³ immediately if it is an **emergency**.
 - The consultant explains the **benefits** and **risks** to you, the **patient**⁴.
 - After the operation, nurses **care for** you while you **recover**.
 - The operation is **successful**.
 - When you are **well enough**, you can go home to recover completely.
- go into hospital** go for treatment and stay there for a night or more
go to (the) hospital go there for treatment, but not stay in
go to the hospital go as a visitor
unwell not well; ill
examine look carefully at sb or sth to see if there is anything wrong
arrange organize or plan sth
consultant a senior doctor in a hospital who knows a lot about a particular medical subject
test a medical examination on part of your body, e.g. an **eye test**, a **blood test**
sample a small amount of sth that is looked at, tested, examined, etc. to find out what the rest is like
treat give medical help to make sb better
treatment *n*
operation In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body (**operates**) to take out or repair a damaged part.
emergency a sudden dangerous situation when sb needs help quickly
benefit sth that has a good or helpful result
risk a danger that sth bad may happen
care for sb look after sb SYN **take care of sb**
recover from sth become well after you have been ill SYN **get over sth**
successful If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.

SPOTLIGHT *enough*

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means as much or as many as you need. In negative sentences, it means less than you need.

- He's **strong enough** to get up. = He has the strength he needs to get up.
- She's **not well enough** to go out. = She needs to feel better before she can go out.

You can also use **enough** before uncountable and plural nouns.

- I've got **enough** money. = I've got all the money I need.
- There aren't **enough** doctors. = We need more doctors.

1 Complete the table with the words below according to their stress patterns. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|----------|------------|---------|--------------|
| recover ✓ | treatment | benefit | unwell | get over | operate | patient |
| sample | arrange | successful | hospital | consultant | enough | take care of |
| decide | doctor | remember | | | | personal |
| ..... | ..... | ▶ recover | ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ The patient / nurse has the operation.
- The *consultant* / *patient* goes into hospital.
 - The *consultant* / *patient* arranges the tests.
 - The *consultant* / *patient* may have to have an X-ray.
 - The *nurse* / *patient* may take a blood sample.
 - The *doctor* / *patient* may need treatment as an emergency.
 - The *doctor* / *patient* explains the benefits of the treatment.
 - The *patient* / *nurse* cares for the person after the operation.
 - The *consultant* / *patient* gets over the operation.
 - The *nurse* / *patient* is strong enough to leave hospital.

3 Which words are being defined?

- ▶ a person who is ill and having medical treatment
- 1 give sb medical help to make them better
- 2 a danger that sth bad might happen
- 3 sth that has a good or helpful result
- 4 look after sb, especially if they are ill
- 5 a small amount of sth that shows what the rest is like
- 6 a sudden situation where sb needs help
- 7 ill
- 8 photos or pictures of the inside of a body
- 9 cut sb's body open to repair sth or take out a part
- 10 getting the result you want



4 Complete the words in the text.

- A Hi, Safieh. How are you?
- B Well, I'm a bit worried, actually. I've just been to the ▶ hospital to see a consultant about my eye. He (1) e..... me to see what was wrong, and then arranged for some (2) t..... too. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o.....
- A Oh, dear. Is it (4) an e.....?
- B Yes, I have to have it done immediately – in fact, I've got to go (5) i..... hospital tomorrow.
- A And are there any (6) r..... with the treatment?
- B I don't think so. It's quite a simple operation, and it's usually very (7) s.....: 98% of people can see better afterwards.
- A And when will you be well (8) e..... to start work again?
- B He said I'll need a week to (9) g..... o..... the operation. My sister is going to (10) t..... c..... of me at home.
- A Well, good luck! I hope it goes well.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

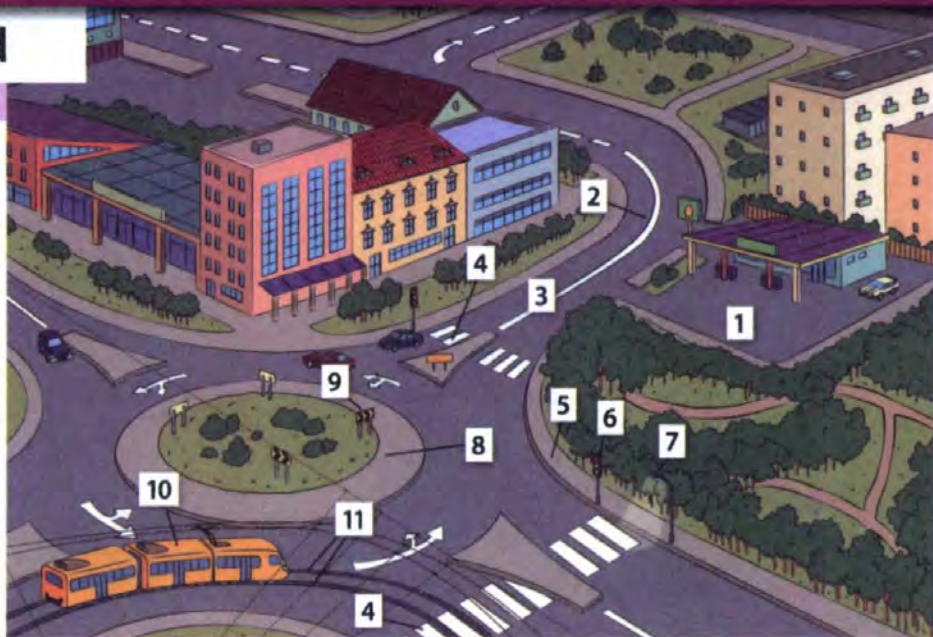
- When did you last go to hospital, and why?
- Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When?
- In your country, when patients are in hospital, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too?
- Can you see a consultant immediately in your country, or do you have to wait?
- Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a consultant?
- Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation?



31 Roads

A On the road

- 1 petrol station
- 2 bend *n, v*
- 3 main road
- 4 crossing
- 5 pavement
- 6 traffic lights
- 7 street light
- 8 roundabout
- 9 road sign
- 10 tram
- 11 tracks



The main road is **straight** coming into the town centre, but **bends** at the petrol station. It then **divides** at the roundabout.

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|-------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ straight / <u>main</u> | S | 4 pavement / <u>straight</u> | ..... |
| 1 <u>divide</u> / sign | ..... | 5 <u>light</u> / sign | ..... |
| 2 <u>roundabout</u> / <u>road</u> | ..... | 6 petrol / <u>bend</u> | ..... |
| 3 <u>station</u> / petrol | ..... | 7 <u>tracks</u> / <u>tram</u> | ..... |

2 Circle the correct word.

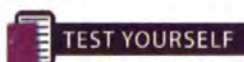
- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ▶ road <u>sign</u> / camera | 2 main <u>sign</u> / road | 4 petrol <u>station</u> / sign |
| 1 traffic <u>station</u> / lights | 3 <u>street</u> / tram tracks | 5 street <u>bend</u> / light |

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If a road changes from straight to a curved shape, it bends.
- 1 You fill your car up at a
 - 2 If it's dark at night, there are so that you can see where you're going.
 - 3 If a road is straight, it doesn't have a in it.
 - 4 A is a big road in a town or between towns.
 - 5 Cars drive in a circle at a
 - 6 People should walk on the, not in the road.
 - 7 If a road goes into two parts, it
 - 8 You have to stop at the until they go green.
 - 9 A in the street gives drivers information and instructions.
 - 10 A must go down this street – there are tracks.

4 **ABOUT YOU** From your home, which of these can you see? Tick the boxes, or ask another student.

- | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| a road sign | <input type="checkbox"/> | traffic lights | <input type="checkbox"/> | a straight road | <input type="checkbox"/> | a bend in a road | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a road which divides | <input type="checkbox"/> | street lights | <input type="checkbox"/> | a roundabout | <input type="checkbox"/> | a main road | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| tram or train tracks | <input type="checkbox"/> | a petrol station | <input type="checkbox"/> | a pavement | <input type="checkbox"/> | a crossing | <input type="checkbox"/> |



B A road accident

Here is the latest travel news ...

There has been a **serious** accident on the A31 outside Winchester. It **occurred** just after 7.00 a.m., when a **sports car**¹ **skidded** on the wet road **surface** in the slow lane, and hit a **cyclist**² with great **force**.

Emergency services are at the scene of the accident, and an **ambulance**³ has taken the injured cyclist to hospital. He is thought to be in a **serious condition**. The road is still **blocked**, and drivers are being advised to **avoid** the area.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|---------------------------|---|
| serious | very bad: <i>a serious accident/injury</i> |
| occur formal | happen, especially in a way that has not been planned |
| skid | suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control |
| surface | the top layer of sth |
| lane | one part of a wide road: <i>the fast/slow lane</i> |
| force | the physical strength shown by one thing hitting another |
| emergency services | the police, ambulance, and/or fire service |
| scene | the place where sth happened, e.g. an accident or a crime |
| condition | the state that sb/sth is in: <i>be in a serious condition; a road in very bad condition</i> |
| block | make it difficult for anything to pass a road, etc. |
| avoid | stay away from sb/sth |

5 Find the missing letter and write the correct word.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|-------------|-------|
| ▶ conditon | <u>condition</u> | | |
| 1 ambulance | ..... | 4 emergency | ..... |
| 2 sene | ..... | 5 ocur | ..... |
| 3 serius | ..... | 6 bloc | ..... |
| | | 7 avid | ..... |
| | | 8 sport car | ..... |
| | | 9 forc | ..... |

6 Replace the underlined words with other words or phrases that have the same meaning.

- ▶ Was it a bad accident? serious
- The top of the road was very icy.
 - You should stay away from the area: it's very busy.
 - When did the police arrive at the place where the accident occurred?
 - The car went sideways out of control on the icy road.
 - The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes.
 - The accident happened late last night.
 - The accident made it difficult for cars to pass on the road.
 - The physical state of the road through the mountains is terrible.

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ There was oil on the surface of the road, which made the driver skid.
- We couldn't get through to the village because a tree had fallen and the road.
 - The of the waves pushed me over.
 - My brother had a injury from an accident on his motorbike.
 - You should move into the fast to pass a slower car on a motorway.
 - Some people have been injured. Please call for an
 - Rinka has an expensive bike, and I believe she's a very good
 - Someone came past me in a little low car.
 - I think the driver must have on the wet road.



32 Driving

A Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always be prepared for bad road conditions, and concentrate 100% of the time.
- Remember that alcohol has a serious effect on your ability to drive safely.
- Never drive when you're very tired, or you risk falling asleep and causing an accident.
- Be aware of other drivers around you as well as the road ahead.
- Keep to the speed limit and don't drive too close to the vehicle in front.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| tip | a piece of practical advice |
| be prepared for sth | be ready and able to deal with any problems |
| concentrate (on sth) | give all your attention to sth |
| alcohol | drinks such as beer and wine that can make people drunk alcoholic adj |
| effect | a change that happens because of sth have an effect (on sb/sth) SYN affect sth/sb |
| risk (doing) sth | put yourself or sth in danger risk n |
| fall asleep | start sleeping |
| ahead | in front |
| keep | continue or stay in a particular place or condition; keep to the speed limit stay at or below the speed limit; keep left stay on the left |
| speed limit | the highest legal speed you can drive on a road |
| close (to sth/sb) | near sth/sb |

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

▶ I've been given some tips on motorway driving.

- 1 You're risking your life in that car.
- 2 She's concentrating on driving.
- 3 She had an alcoholic drink before driving.
- 4 She fell asleep while driving.
- 5 I wasn't aware of the speed limit.
- 6 The road ahead is empty.
- 7 The poor light affected his driving.
- 8 He always keeps to the speed limit.

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Would you like some wine?

- 1 Did the accident affect you? ~ No, thanks. It's bad to drink alcohol before driving.
 - 2 Megan talks a lot in the car. ~ Yes, it had a very big on me.
 - 3 What caused the accident? ~ I know. She doesn't when she's driving.
 - 4 Did Mo give you any advice on the driving test? ~ The driver asleep for a few seconds.
 - 5 Were you looking behind you? ~ Yes, she gave me some useful
 - 6 Did you see what was going to happen? ~ No, I was looking
 - 7 What's the matter? ~ No, I wasn't for it.
 - 8 Were you driving too fast? ~ You're driving too to the car in front of us.
- ~ No, I to the speed limit.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are the tips in this unit useful, or did you know them already?
- 2 What is the speed limit in towns in your country?
- 3 Do people usually keep to it?
- 4 Do you have to be prepared for bad weather on the roads in your country? How?
- 5 Apart from alcohol, what other things can have a negative effect on drivers?

TEST YOURSELF

B Driving problems

I'm a terrible driver. The first time I **took my driving test**, I forgot to **fasten my seat belt**, so I **failed**. The second time, I didn't **signal** when I was turning left, and I failed again. When I finally **passed** and **got my driving licence**, a police officer stopped me for **speeding**. A few weeks later, I went through a **red light** and hit another car. **Luckily**, the other car wasn't **damaged**, but I had to pay £350 on my **insurance** to get my car **fixed**. And then I **ended up** getting a **fine** for driving through the red light.



SPOTLIGHT compounds with driving

When people learn to drive, they often have **driving lessons** before they **take their driving test**. If they pass, they **get a driving licence** (=a document which shows that you are allowed to drive).

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------|---|------------------|--|
| fail | do badly in a test or an exam OPP pass | damage | break or harm sth damage n |
| signal | When you are driving and you signal , you show that you want to turn left/ right, etc. signal n | insurance | an agreement where you pay money to a company, so that it will give you money if sth bad happens |
| speeding | driving faster than the legal speed limit speed v | fix | repair sth |
| red light | a signal telling a driver to stop <i>go through a red light</i> = not stop | end up | get into in a place or situation when you did not plan it |
| luckily | = it is lucky that ... SYN fortunately; luck n | fine | money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong |

4 Circle the correct words or phrases. Be careful: in two questions, both answers are correct.

- ▶ The driver **got** / **went** through a red light, but a police officer stopped him.
- 1 My cousin was stopped by the police for **speeding** / **signalling**.
- 2 Fortunately I passed, so I've got my **driving test** / **driving licence** now.
- 3 She never remembers to **do up** / **fasten** her seat belt.
- 4 You have to have **insurance** / **a fine** to drive a car in this country.
- 5 The driver **signed** / **signalled** to turn left, but in fact he turned right.
- 6 We were planning to go home, but we **ended** / **ended up** at Milly's house.
- 7 It was a long journey, but **luckily** / **fortunately** we got home before the snow.
- 8 I wasn't injured, but my bicycle was badly **damaged** / **hurt** in the accident.
- 9 Did you have to pay **insurance** / **a fine** when the police officer stopped you?
- 10 I fell asleep for a few seconds and it was just **luck** / **luckily** that I didn't hit anything.

5 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

I was a very slow learner, and I had driving / for two years before I the driving test. I was very nervous, and I went through a light, which was extremely dangerous, and, of course, I the test. The second time, I was less nervous and did better: I and got my driving. I bought an old car from a friend and paid a lot of money for to protect the car. However, it had a lot of problems: I couldn't the seat belt, and I couldn't to turn left or right. It also had some to the passenger door from an earlier accident my friend had, so I up having to pay a garage to some of the faults.

- ▶ lessons
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11



TEST YOURSELF

33 Trains and buses

A Train and bus journeys

If there is a **direct train**, it is usually the fastest way to travel from A to B in Britain. A **stopping train** stops at a lot of smaller stations between **main stations**. An **express (train)** provides a faster **service** to your **destination**, and avoids the problem of **traffic jams** on the bus services.

For **rail travel**, you might need a single or a return ticket. Many people buy a **travel card**, which allows them to travel on any bus or train in a specific area for a period of time for less money. A **bus pass** lets you do the same for bus routes. You can buy rail tickets online, from a **ticket machine** or at the **ticket office / booking office** in the station.

If you get a train or bus **in time**, you **catch** it. If you are late, you may **miss** it. You may need to **change trains or buses**.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| service | a system or organization that provides the public with sth that it needs: a bus/train service |
| destination | the place where sb/sth is going |
| traffic jam | a long line of cars, buses, etc. that cannot move or that moves very slowly |
| in time | not late, early enough |
| change trains/buses | get off one train/bus and get on another one |

SPOTLIGHT *journey, trip, travel*

A **journey** is used to talk about going from one place to another.

- *my journey to school*
- *a journey through Asia*

A **trip** is used to describe the whole visit, including your stay in a place.

- *I've been on a trip to Spain for three weeks.*

Travel [U] is used to talk about the activity of moving from one place to another. **travel** v

- *Rail travel is slower than flying, but I prefer it.*
- *Do you enjoy travelling by train?*

You **go on a journey/trip** (NOT ~~go on a travel~~).

1 Circle the correct word.

▶ direct *fare* / train

1 booking *machine* / office

2 *traffic* / travel jam

3 *express* / rail train

4 *main station* / travel

5 *ticket machine* / pass

6 *in* / at time

7 go on a *trip* / travel

8 *stopping* / journey train

9 *travel* / bus card

10 bus *pass* / machine

11 rail *destination* / travel

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ A direct train only stops at your destination.

1 You can buy a ticket at a booking office or a

2 A stopping train usually stops often between the

3 The bus company provides a very good for its customers.

4 It takes five hours from London to Strasbourg, so it's a long

5 Flying is generally the fastest way to

6 If you don't want to pay for your bus ticket each time, get a

7 If you arrive in time for your train, you will it, but if you are late, you will it.

8 Too many cars and buses on the road might mean there will be a

3 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

miss rail travel time destination booking change journey trip ✓

Last year my sister Cally and I went on a ▶ trip to Madrid. My sister loves (1) travel, so we decided to take the train from London to Atocha Station in Madrid. It's a very long (2) - it takes all day, really. You have to (3) trains twice, once in Paris and again in Barcelona. We were surprised to find that train tickets are incredibly expensive, and Cally spent hours at the (4) office trying to find the cheapest tickets. On the day we left, it snowed and we didn't get to the station in (5) to catch the train, and then we (6) another train in Paris, so we had problems for the rest of the day. We finally got to our (7) after midnight. I've told Cally I don't enjoy (8) by train any more.

TEST YOURSELF

B Train problems

The train **broke down**, and we didn't arrive at our destination until after midnight.

Sorry, I **was held up**. My train was **due** at 9.42, but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.

I **commute** to the city every day, but the train I catch is often **cancelled** without **warning**.

My train to London got in late, so I **missed** my **connection** to Brussels.

My sister **was meant to** pick me up at the station, but she forgot.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| break down | If a train/car, etc. breaks down , it stops working. |
| hold sb up | (often passive) make sb slow or late hold-up n SYN delay |
| due | expected to arrive or happen |
| get in | (usually of a train or plane) SYN arrive OPP leave, depart |
| commute | travel a long way from home to work every day |
| cancel | decide that sth that has been planned will not happen |
| warning | a piece of information that sth bad may happen |
| connection | a train, plane, etc. that leaves soon after another arrives, so that people can change from one to the other miss a connection |
| be meant to (do sth) | If sb is meant to do sth , they have been asked to do it and have a responsibility to do it. |
| pick sb/sth up | go to a place and collect sb/sth, usually in a car |

4 Good or bad? Write G or B.

▶ I caught my connection to Rome.

- The train was cancelled.
- The train's due in a minute.
- I commute two hours every day.
- Dad picked me up at the airport.
- Our car broke down.



- They didn't get held up.
- We had a delay on the way to the station.
- We had no warning about the accident.
- There weren't any hold-ups on the journey.
- When I got there, the train had departed.

5 Complete the sentences.

▶ My husband was **meant** to meet me, but he missed the train.

- They've just said the train is in five minutes, so that's good.
- The plane to Paris was late, so I missed my to Bordeaux.
- We had problems at the border: we were for two hours.
- Our teacher arrived late because the train company two trains this morning.
- I used to from Cambridge to London every day for work.
- What time does your train in?
- My father has gone to the airport to his brother
- I waited an hour for the train, then it was cancelled without
- There was a long at the airport and we didn't leave until midnight.
- Our train just outside Milan. We sat there for two hours until it was fixed.

6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. Write your answers, or tell another student.

▶ Some of my family have to commute to work. **T - My father and brother both commute to Warsaw.**

- Trains are often cancelled where I live because of the weather.
- I often get held up when I'm travelling by train.
- I've never missed a connection.
- I've never been on a train that broke down.
- You are meant to have a ticket to go on the station platform.
- I was once delayed for over three hours on a train journey.



TEST YOURSELF

34 Air travel

A Flying

FLYING QUESTIONNAIRE

- 1 Do you always look for the cheapest **airfare**?
- 2 At the airport **check-in**, are there often long **queues**?
- 3 What kinds of things do you do in the **departure lounge**?
- 4 On a flight, do you prefer **take-off** or **landing**?
- 5 In the **cabin**¹, do you prefer to sit near the **wing**² or the **tail**³?
- 6 Do you keep your seatbelt fastened **throughout** the flight?
- 7 Have you ever been **airsick**?
- 8 Did the last flight you took leave and arrive **on schedule**?
- 9 Have you ever flown in a **helicopter**⁴? If not, would you like to?



GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| airfare | the money you pay to travel by plane | landing | coming down onto the ground in a plane land v |
| check-in | the place where you go to in an airport to leave your suitcases and show your ticket check in v | throughout | during the whole period of time of sth |
| queue | a line of people waiting to do sth queue v | airsick | feeling that you are going to vomit when you are on a plane ALSO travel-sick/seasick/carsick |
| departure | leaving a place. OPP arrival You wait in departures / the departure lounge before you get on the plane. OPP arrivals | schedule | a plan of activities and when they will happen. If a plane leaves on schedule , it leaves at the time it was expected to leave. SYN on time |
| take-off | the moment when an aeroplane starts to fly take off v | | |

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ throughout / bathroom \$

1 queue / throughout

3 check-in / chemist

5 lounge / change

2 departure / mach

4 schedule / school

6 helicopter / arrival

2 Write the words in the table.

tail ✓ be airsick check-in queue wing take-off landing arrivals cabin departure lounge

| IN THE AIRPORT BUILDING | IN OR ON THE PLANE |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| ..... | ▶ tail |
| | |
| | |

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a word or phrase. The meaning must stay the same.

▶ A bird flew into the part of the plane where passengers sit. cabin

1 We arrived at the airport and went to the desk with our bags and tickets.

2 Children were making a lot of noise during the whole of the flight.

3 The money we paid for the plane ticket was very cheap.

4 We sat and talked in the place where you wait before getting on the plane.

5 The plane left the ground and started to fly in heavy rain.

6 We landed in Lima at the planned time.

7 My brother was waiting for me in the place where people get off the plane.

8 I stood in a long line of people for an hour at the airport.

9 Passengers should check in ninety minutes before they leave.

10 Have you checked the plane timetable?

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.



B Choosing your seat

WHICH SEAT IS BEST?

It doesn't matter if you travel for business or pleasure, the choice of ticket is an important one. Most of us can't afford to travel first class, but business class is less expensive and has certain advantages over economy class. Pay more, and you get the following benefits:

- board more quickly
- enjoy a higher standard of food
- enjoy greater luxury
- be served by very experienced flight attendants
- have more private space
- have access to a greater variety of entertainment

SPOTLIGHT *experience/experienced*

If you **have experience** [U] of something, you know about it and have done it before.

- I **have a lot of experience** with children.

An **experience** [C] is something that has happened to you.

- Living in India was an interesting **experience**.

Experienced [adj]

- She's a very **experienced** teacher.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| pleasure | the feeling of being happy and enjoying sth |
| afford | If you can afford sth, you have enough money to pay for it. |
| first class | the part of the plane which is more expensive to travel in business class (cheaper than first class) economy class (the cheapest class of air travel) |
| advantage | sth that helps you or is useful OPP disadvantage |
| board (a plane, boat, etc.) | get on (a plane, boat, etc.) |
| standard | how good sb or sth is |
| luxury | a way of living where you have all the beautiful and expensive things you want |
| private | for one particular person or small group only |
| have access to sth | having the opportunity to use sth |
| entertainment | anything that people think is interesting or funny: films, concerts, theatre, etc. |

5 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ▶ experience | 3 advantage | 6 economy | 9 luxury |
| 1 access | 4 pleasure | 7 business | 10 disadvantage |
| 2 private | 5 standard | 8 entertainment | |

6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Have you got on the plane yet?
- 1 Can I go in this part of the plane? ~ Yes, we've just **boarded**.....
- 2 There are plenty of things to watch on the flight. ~ No, I'm sorry, it's p.....
- 3 They've worked for the airline for many years. ~ Yes, there's lots of e.....
- 4 First class is too expensive for me. ~ Yes, they are very e.....
- 5 Can you use the internet on this flight? ~ I agree. I can't a..... it either.
- 6 Flying is something that makes you very happy. ~ Yes, we have a..... to it.
- 7 On long night flights, you can sleep. ~ Yes, it gives me a lot of p.....
- 8 The service on the plane was excellent. ~ Yes, that's a big a.....
- ~ Yes, it was of a very high s.....

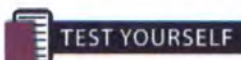
7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I can **afford**..... to fly first class.
- 1 I've had lots of interesting..... when travelling.
- 2 I've always had a high..... of service when flying.
- 3 I usually have..... to the internet and entertainment on a flight.
- 4 Flying is no..... for me: I hate it.
- 5 I hate queueing to..... a plane or train.
- 6 I would love the..... of first class travel, but unfortunately I've never had it.

ABOUT YOU

8 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true for you? If not, change them to make them true.

- ▶ I can afford to fly first class. I certainly can't afford to fly first class. I can't even afford economy class!



35 Holidays

A Camping



Advice for campers

- When you're **camping**, don't try and **put up** a tent **unless** the ground is completely **level**.
- Choose **campsites** with a good variety of **facilities** and entertainment **in case** the weather is terrible and you can't spend much time **outdoors**.
- If you want to explore the **countryside** and you're **hiking** during the day, **be sure to** have a small **backpack** for water, maps, lunch, etc.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| camp | stay in a tent for a short time (go camping <i>n</i>) |
| put sth up | build sth such as a tent, a wall or fence |
| unless | if not; except if |
| level | flat; with no part higher than any other |
| campsite | a place where people on holiday stay in tents, usually with toilets, water, etc. |
| facilities | a building, service, piece of equipment that makes it possible to do sth, e.g. showers, a swimming pool, sports equipment |
| in case | because of the possibility of sth happening |
| countryside | land outside towns and cities with fields, woods, etc. |
| hike | go for a long walk in the country, often for pleasure |
| be sure to do sth | used to tell sb to do sth |

SPOTLIGHT outdoor(s) and indoor(s)

- Outdoors** is an adverb and means 'not inside a building'.
 OPP **indoors** Notice the underlined stress.
 ■ *It's sunny - let's go outdoors. It's raining - let's go indoors.*
Outdoor and **indoor** are adjectives.
 ■ outdoor/indoor sports
 ■ an outdoor/indoor swimming pool

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| ▶ <u>u</u> nless | 4 level | 8 facilities |
| 1 <u>i</u> ndoors | 5 <u>o</u> utdoor | 9 <u>i</u> ndoor |
| 2 <u>b</u> ackpack | 6 <u>c</u> amping | 10 <u>o</u> tdoors |
| 3 <u>c</u> ampsite | 7 <u>c</u> ountryside | |

2 Complete the second sentence. The meaning must stay the same as the first sentence.

- ▶ I love hiking on the hills and in the fields. / I love hiking in the countryside.
- Remember to check the weather forecast. / Be _____ to check the weather forecast.
 - Make sure that the ground is flat and not on a hill. / Make sure that the ground is _____.
 - The campsite has no water, services or sports equipment. / The campsite has no _____.
 - Do you like sleeping in a tent on holiday? / Do you like _____?
 - Take a jacket because it might be cold. / Take a jacket in _____ it's cold.
 - Don't go out. / Stay _____.
 - I don't like swimming pools in the open air. / I don't like _____ pools.
 - We walked ten kilometres across the hills. / We _____ ten kilometres across the hills.

3 Complete the text.

I love the ▶ outdoor _____ life, and I'd been thinking of going to the Black Forest in Germany, because the (1) c. _____ there looks spectacular. I found a (2) c. _____ which had good (3) f. _____: hot showers, a café and a small food store. Unfortunately, I arrived at night and had to (4) p. _____ up my (5) t. _____ in the dark. I knew I wouldn't sleep well (6) _____ I took a sleeping pill, but I still had a cold and uncomfortable night. In the morning, I decided that I would (7) h. _____ to the nearest town which was 15 kilometres away. I tried to jump across a small river, but I fell and dropped my (8) b. _____ in the water, so I lost my sandwiches and water bottle. It was a miserable day.





B A seaside break

My friend Carol and I decided to have a short **break** at the **seaside** for a few days. We **made a reservation** at a **hostel** in South Wales where the prices were very **reasonable**. We were **looking forward to** a few days of **sunbathing**, seeing the **sights** and eating delicious food. However, it **turned out** that the hostel was in a very **remote** location with no beaches, cafés or facilities nearby. Seeing the heavy rain, we **headed** home the following day.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|--------------------|--|------------------------------------|--|
| break | a short holiday: <i>a short/weekend break</i> | look forward to (doing) sth | be happy and excited about sth that is going to happen |
| seaside | an area or place next to the sea where people often go on holiday <i>seaside adj: a seaside holiday</i> | sunbathing | lying in the sun so that your skin becomes darker <i>sunbathe v</i> |
| reservation | a room, restaurant table, train seat, etc. that you have asked sb to keep for you: <i>make a reservation</i> | sights pl | interesting places that are often visited by tourists |
| hostel | a place like a cheap hotel where you can stay: <i>youth hostel</i> | turn out | happen in a particular way, especially one that you did not expect |
| reasonable | (of prices) not expensive | remote head | far away from other towns, cities and people move in a particular direction |

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ break / reservation S
- 1 remote / location 3 sunbathe / break 5 reasonable / remote
- 2 seaside / head 4 hostel / look forward to 6 seaside / sights

5 True or false? Write T or F. If they are false, write true sentences.

- ▶ Making a reservation at a hotel is the same as booking a room there. T
- 1 Your skin usually changes colour when you sunbathe.
- 2 A break is a long holiday.
- 3 In a holiday location, a police station is one of the usual sights.
- 4 You would be happy if the price of something was reasonable.
- 5 If a place is remote, there are a lot of people there.
- 6 If you're looking forward to an event, you want to go to it.
- 7 A hostel is a place where you can sleep.
- 8 If you head home, you are leaving home.

6 Complete the questions using words from the box in the correct place.

break sunbathing seaside make out sights remote forward youth ✓

ABOUT YOU

- ▶ Have you ever stayed in a / hostel? youth
- 1 Do you like at the seaside?
- 2 Do you prefer to stay in a town or a more location?
- 3 When you go on holiday, do you always a reservation?
- 4 Do you enjoy going to see the in a new city?
- 5 In the summer, do you prefer to have a holiday?
- 6 Do you ever go away on a weekend?
- 7 Do you look to travelling, or do you worry about it?
- 8 Do your holidays always turn as you expected?


7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

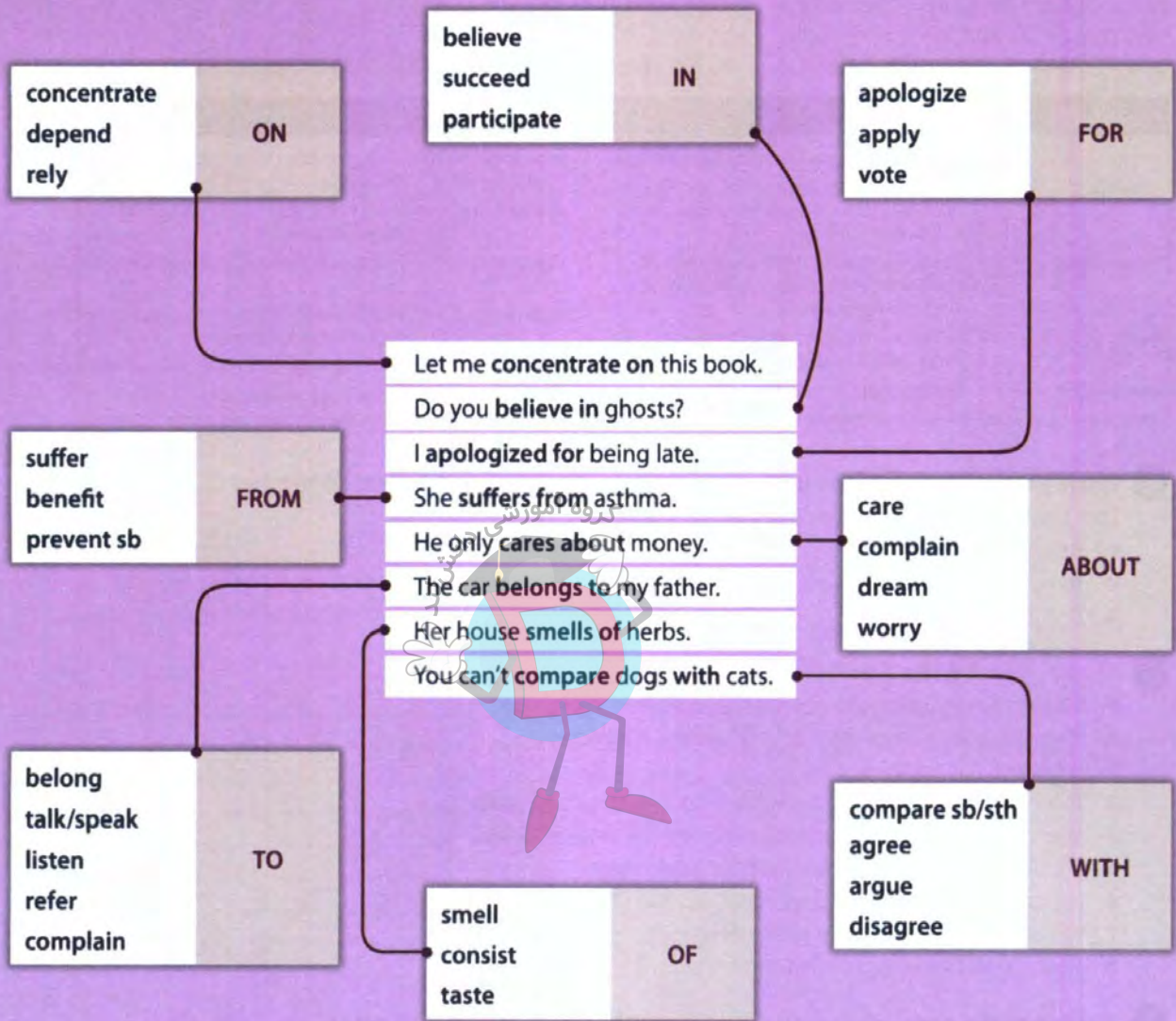
- ▶ Have you ever stayed in a youth hostel? Yes, quite often. I travelled in Europe when I was a student and stayed in several. They were great, and I met a lot of people.



TEST YOURSELF

36 Verb + preposition

Some of the verbs are explained in the glossary, others are explained in different parts of the book. Use the  or the Word List to help you if necessary.



SPOTLIGHT verb + preposition

Some verbs can be followed by different prepositions.

argue with sb:

- I **argued with** my brother.

argue about sth:

- We **argued about** the holiday.

You **talk/speak/complain to** sb, but **talk/speak/complain about** sth or sb, and **agree/disagree with** sb but **agree/disagree about** sth.

GLOSSARY

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

concentrate (on sth)

rely on sb/sth

participate (in sth) formal

apologize (for sth) formal

benefit (from sth)

suffer (from sth)

prevent sb from (doing) sth

care (about sth/sb)

consist of sth

refer to sb/sth

give all your attention to sth

1 need sb or sth: She **relies on** her parents.

2 be sure that sb or sth will do what they say they will do: You can **rely on** him for help. SYN **depend on sb/sth**

do sth together with other people

say sorry for sth

get sth good or useful from sth

feel pain, sadness or another unpleasant feeling because of sth

stop sb doing sth

think that sth/sb is important

be made from two or more things

talk about sb/sth: In the interview, he **referred to** his old science teacher.

1 Underline the main stress in these verbs. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ depend | 3 concentrate | 6 disagree | 9 complain |
| 1 participate | 4 succeed | 7 compare | 10 apply |
| 2 apologize | 5 benefit | 8 prevent | 11 rely |

2 Circle the correct preposition.

- ▶ Do you ever listen to / from the radio?
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 We compared our exam results <i>from / with</i> the other class's. | 5 I can't concentrate <i>on / in</i> my work when it's noisy. |
| 2 Martha still depends <i>of / on</i> her parents a lot. | 6 This soap smells <i>from / of</i> honey. |
| 3 I don't think she cares <i>about / for</i> the money. | 7 Emma is worried <i>for / about</i> her brother. |
| 4 Do you believe <i>on / in</i> life after death? | 8 Edward succeeded <i>on / in</i> passing all his exams. |
| | 9 This soup tastes <i>with / of</i> cheese, and it's delicious. |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- ▶ British people often talk about the weather.
- Does the group always agree you?
 - I often dream my dog.
 - Both my brothers suffer migraines.
 - Does this book belong anyone?
 - Ava is going to apply that job.
 - We had to complain the food – it was terrible.
 - Marcus wasn't referring you when he said some students were lazy.
 - I didn't want to participate the discussion.
 - The book consists three sections.
 - I'm not sure who will benefit the changes in the law.
 - Olivia wants to concentrate criminal law when she finishes her degree.
 - A good education will help you to succeed finding an interesting job.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and preposition.

- ▶ If you compare this phone with the other one, you can see this one is much better.
- The job advert looked interesting, so I'm going to it.
 - I'm afraid I my wife all the time – she does everything for me.
 - Did George being late?
 - Who did you in the last election?
 - He locked the door, and that us leaving.
 - I'm afraid my sister and I never each other – we argue all the time.
 - He doesn't other people: he's only interested in himself.
 - Somebody gave me some toothpaste that apples. It was very odd.
 - The service was very slow so I the manager.

5 ABOUT YOU Finish these sentences in a way that is true for you. If possible, compare with another student.

- ▶ I often listen to music on my phone when I'm going to work
- I think I rely
 - In the past I have complained
 - I will never vote
 - I sometimes dream
 - My family sometimes argue
 - I sometimes have to apologize
 - I sometimes worry
 - I often disagree
 - I don't want to depend



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Is there an **alternative to** prison for serious crime or less serious crime?
- Should young people have **experience of** working when they are still at school?
- What do you think about the **rise in** the number of women in politics?
- What are the **advantages of** living in a big city?
- Do you think young people should have more **respect for** older people?
- Is there a **need for** more and better roads in your country?
- What is the **connection between** drugs and crime?
- What is the main **cause of** poverty in our society?
- Do you have any **doubts about** the safety of the food we produce?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| alternative (to sth/sb) | a thing that you can choose instead of another thing |
| experience (of sth) | knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it |
| rise (in sth) | when the amount or level of sth goes up OPP fall (in sth) |
| advantage (of sth) | sth that helps you or is useful OPP disadvantage (of sth) |
| respect (for sb/sth) | the feeling you have when you have a high opinion of sb/sth |
| need (for sth) | a situation in which you must do (sth) or have sth |
| connection (between A and B) | the way that one thing is joined or related to another |
| cause (of sth) | a thing or person that makes sth happen |
| poverty | the state of being poor: <i>A lot of people are living in poverty.</i> |
| doubt (about sth) | a feeling of being uncertain about sth or not believing in sth |

SPOTLIGHT preposition + -ing form

If a preposition is followed directly by a verb, it will be an **-ing** form, not an infinitive.

- *What is the advantage **of staying** here?*
- *I don't have any experience **of living** in another country.*

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ respect 1 alternative 2 advantage 3 experience 4 connection 5 poverty 6 disadvantage

2 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- ▶ Do you have experience of working abroad?
- 1 There is a need _____ much better medical services.
 - 2 I think the weather is the main advantage _____ living here.
 - 3 Do people have respect _____ police officers in your country?
 - 4 What is the main cause _____ plane crashes?
 - 5 There is obviously a connection _____ health and diet.
 - 6 I don't have any doubts _____ the politician I voted for this year.
 - 7 Better public transport is the only alternative _____ more cars on the roads.
 - 8 There has been a fall _____ the birth rate.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct noun and preposition.

- ▶ Why is there a need _____ for _____ more houses?
- 1 There has been a _____ global temperatures in the last ten years.
 - 2 I think noise is the main _____ living in the city centre.
 - 3 Some experts have serious _____ the safety of nuclear power.
 - 4 A lot of people don't like politicians and don't have _____ them.
 - 5 I have worked with adults but I don't have any _____ working with children.
 - 6 What do you think is the main _____ cancer?
 - 7 Is there a cheap _____ petrol cars?
 - 8 I think there is a strong _____ poverty and crime.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

38 Prepositions in time phrases

I'm afraid I can't stop and talk – I'm **in a hurry**.
I'm going to Jo's wedding and I have to get to the church **on time**.
If I get the 3.30 train, I'll be there **in time** to walk to the church.

It'll be great: I haven't seen my cousins **for ages**.

I enjoy weddings, but **at times** I get emotional and cry.

The ceremony is quite short, so we won't be in the church **for long**.
By the time the wedding ceremony is over though, I'll be hungry.
We're all going to the reception afterwards, and we'll be there **for a while**.

Jo told me last year she was getting married. **At the time** I was very surprised!

It was difficult finding anywhere to live, but **at last** they've bought a flat.
They can't move in yet. **In the meantime**, they'll live with Jo's parents.

SPOTLIGHT **at last**

At last means 'in the end' or 'finally', but is often used after there has been a long wait and/or a number of problems.

- We spent all day looking for a pharmacy, then **at last** we found one.
- (NOT We went to the cinema, had a meal, then **at last** went home.)

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| in a hurry | needing or wanting to do sth very quickly |
| on time | not late or early; at exactly the correct time |
| in time (for sth/ to do sth) | not late |
| for long | (used in questions and negative sentences) for a long time |
| by the time | used for saying what has already happened when sth else happens |
| for a while | a period of time (not usually a long time) |
| for ages | for a very long time |
| at times | sometimes: <i>My job is difficult at times.</i> |
| at the time | (referring to a past time) then |
| in the meantime | in the time between two things happening SYN meanwhile |

1 Make seven more time phrases using words the box.

| | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|--------|------|-------|-------|----------|------------|
| by ✓ | in | in the | at | ages | time | meantime | the time ✓ |
| for | for a | at | in a | while | times | last | hurry |

▶ **by the time**


2 Complete the sentences.

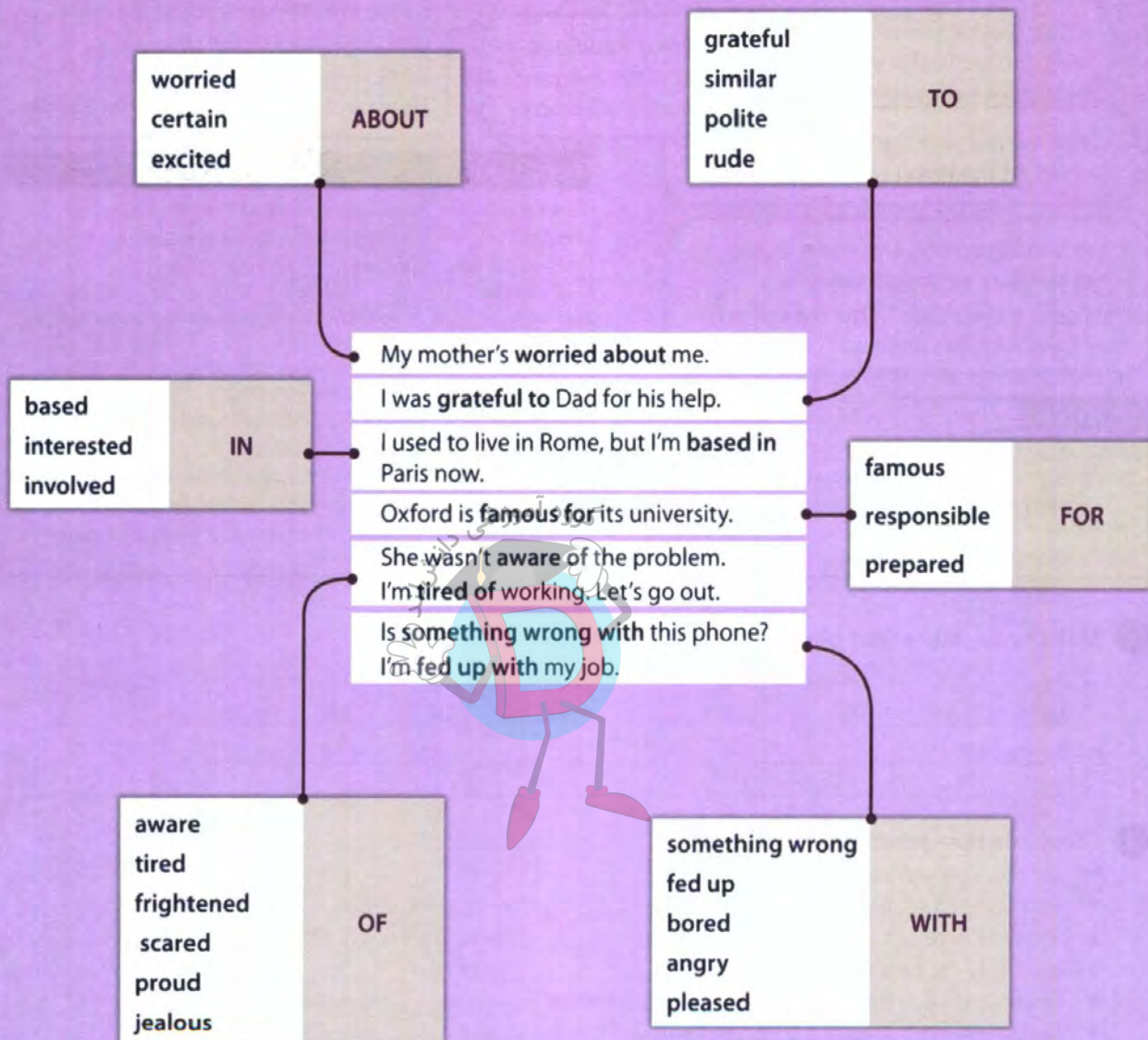
- ▶ The students are usually here on **time**
- 1 I ran back to the shop, but by the I got there, it was closed.
- 2 Seb's not here, but he won't be out for because it's nearly dinner time!
- 3 Li went to the beach, so he'll be gone for a In the, let's chat.
- 4 I was standing in the rain for half an hour and then at they got here.
- 5 Martin was in a, so he couldn't stop for lunch.
- 6 Do you know, I haven't seen my next-door neighbour for

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable time phrase.

- ▶ It's usually warm here, but **at times** it can get cold in the evenings.
- 1 It doesn't matter if you're early. Just make sure you're there for the meal.
- 2 When Max says 8 p.m., he means 8 p.m., so be there
- 3 We haven't been outside Europe: it must be about five years.
- 4 When I got there, Sylvia was studying, so I didn't stay
- 5 I don't remember much about the cottage. I was just a small child.
- 6 We spent months looking for somewhere to live, then we found just the right place – close to the centre but in a quiet road.
- 7 When I first lived in Edinburgh, I stayed with my aunt – just a couple of weeks.
- 8 I'd like to play tennis, but I finish this work, it'll be too late.
- 9 My parents said they would be back in a couple of hours, so we could watch a video.

TEST YOURSELF

Some of the adjectives are explained in the glossary. If necessary, you can check the meaning of other words using the Word List or .



GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| grateful (to sb) | If you are grateful , you feel or show your thanks to sb who has helped you or done sth for you. | aware (of sth) | knowing about sth |
| prepared (for sth) | ready for sth | tired (of sth) | having had too much of sth and wanting to do sth else |
| fed up (with sth/ sb) inf | bored or unhappy with sth/sb, especially because it has continued for a long time | proud (of sth) | pleased about sth that you or others have done |
| something wrong (with sth) | not working well, or not as it should be | jealous (of sb) | angry or sad because you want what another person has |
| | | involved (in sth) | taking part in sth; being part of sth |

SPOTLIGHT adjective + preposition

- Some adjectives are followed by different prepositions with a different meaning.
- I travel **around** the world, but I'm **based in** New York. (= It is my home or main office.)
 - The film is **based on** a book. (= The film uses the book or is developed from it.)

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ tired / similar **D** 2 aware / prepared 4 grateful / faumous 6 certain / frighteuned
 1 wrong / worrieud 3 pleased / jealous 5 polite / famous 7 based / grateful

2 Write the words with their prepositions in the correct column.

| | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| bored ✓ | tired | something wrong | aware | scared | angry | similar |
| rude | jealous | grateful | proud | fed up | pleased | polite |

| with | to | of |
|--------------|-------|-------|
| ▶ bored with | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

3 Make correct sentences.

- ▶ depend / brother / on / can / your / you ? Can you depend on your brother ?
 1 of / he / problem / is / aware / the / ?
 2 up / I'm / essays / with / writing / fed
 3 younger / is / of / Sophia / sister / her / jealous
 4 he's / marketing / involved / not / now / in
 5 famous / pyramids / is / for / Egypt / the
 6 wasn't / exam / for / I / prepared / the

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

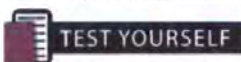
- ▶ Henry was quite rude to the teacher.
 1 Olivia is getting very excited going to university.
 2 Is Mark still involved the company?
 3 Doctors have to be very aware their patients' feelings.
 4 Is Martha still interested art?
 5 The company is based France now.
 6 I'm very proud the picture I painted.
 7 The programme is based a true-life story.
 8 I'm tired doing this cleaning. Let's watch a film.
 9 She's not certain the dates for the next course.
 10 Is Emma still responsible the whole department?

5 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective.

- ▶ My Mum was very angry with me when I broke her favourite vase.
 1 Her son has just become a doctor. She's very of him.
 2 This book is to his last one – they're all the same!
 3 I've been of flying ever since I was in a plane that nearly crashed.
 4 I'm with looking after my younger sister. I have to do it all the time, and it's really boring.
 5 I'm afraid there's something with the computer: the screen has frozen.
 6 I was very to the teacher because she gave me lots of help in her free time.
 7 Ted is of anyone who gets very friendly with his girlfriend. I think it annoys her.
 8 I was with my exam results. I passed all of them and I didn't think I would.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete these sentences about yourself, or talk to another student.

- ▶ I'm frightened of snakes
 I'm very grateful I'm bored
 I get fed up I'm usually polite
 I'm proud At the moment, I'm worried



40 Prepositional phrases

A All about you

LET'S FIND OUT ABOUT YOU!

- Do you ever argue with people **in public**?
- Do you believe that couples should stay together **for life**?
- What do you do **on a regular basis** that helps you with stress?
- What's the best way to help people who are living **on the streets**?
- Would you work **for free** for a charity you believe in?
- Do you think things have got better in your country **in recent years**?
- Do you think that people will stop using plastic **over time**?
- Do you think young people are **at risk from** social media?
- **In general**, do you think you are a happy person?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| in public | when other people are there OPP in private |
| for life | till the end of your life |
| on a regular basis | having the same space or time between each thing and the next |
| on the street(s) inf | without a home; living outside |
| for free | without payment |
| in recent years, months, etc. | that happened or began not many years, months, etc. ago |
| over time | as time passes |
| at risk (from sth) | in a situation where something unpleasant or dangerous could happen SYN in danger (of sth) |
| in general | usually; most of the time SYN on the whole |

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ Those men are on the streets. / Those men are working on the streets.
- 1 She did the work for free. / She wasn't paid for the work.
- 2 In general, I liked it. / On the whole, I liked it.
- 3 I don't do it in public. / I don't do it in private.
- 4 The children are at risk. / The children are in danger.
- 5 I haven't seen Rob in recent years. / I haven't seen Rob for a very long time.
- 6 I'm busy at the moment. / I'm busy in general.
- 7 I go to the gym on a regular basis. / I go to the gym when I want to.
- 8 People change their minds over time. / People change their minds as time passes.

2 Complete the phrases with the correct preposition(s).

- ▶ In general, women earn less than men.
- 1 The injury affected him life.
- 2 the whole, I didn't like the film.
- 3 Jack's hair has gone white time.
- 4 Are the boys risk this illness?
- 5 Things have changed a lot recent years.
- 6 The children could be danger.
- 7 I asked to see her private.
- 8 Do you take exercise a regular basis?
- 9 You have to pay: nothing is free.

3 Complete the sentences with a prepositional phrase.

- ▶ What politicians say in public is often different from what they believe in private
- 1 I get up later at the weekend than during the week.
- 2 Nobody has a job these days. You might have many jobs over the years.
- 3 Parents have to pay for the show, but children can go in Aren't they lucky?
- 4 Young people can put themselves if they go out alone late at night.
- 5 You see a lot of people living They have nothing and nobody. It's terrible.
- 6 The problem with being famous is that you are always recognized
- 7 , permanent work is better paid than temporary work.
- 8 , people have become much more worried about global warming.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B in, at, on, by

Is there anything **in particular** you want to do this evening? (= especially)
 I didn't know it was your coat – I took it **by mistake**. (= I didn't plan to take it.)
 There were **at least** 20 people there. (= not less than 20)
 I met Dan **on the way** to school. (= on the road/journey)
 I couldn't move: Mo's car was **in the way**. (= in front of me so I couldn't move)
 I suppose, **on average**, we go abroad two or three times a year. (= normally; in most years, etc.)
 I'm afraid there's no coffee. ~ OK, **in that case**, I'll have tea. (= if that is the situation)
At the end of the film, the couple move to Los Angeles. (= in the final part of something)
 The clubs were closed, so **in the end** we went home early. (= finally, after some time)
 He wanted to know about the meeting **in detail**. (= with all the information I had)
 We met Marisa **by chance** when we were in Munich. (= without planning to)
 Why **on earth** do you want to go out in this terrible weather? (= you must be crazy!)

SPOTLIGHT *on earth*

On earth *inf* is used in questions when you are very surprised or want to say something very strongly.

- What **on earth** are they doing?
- Where **on earth** is Milla?
- How **on earth** did you do that?
- Who **on earth** made this jumper?

5 Make eight more phrases using **in, at, by** or **on**.

| | | | | |
|--------|---------|------------|-----------|-------|
| way ✓ | chance | earth | mistake | least |
| detail | average | particular | that case | |

▶ in the way

6 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

- ▶ The weather was awful all day, so finally we decided to go home. in the end
- 1 We'll need not less than two hours to get there.
 - 2 There isn't anything especially that you don't eat, is there?
 - 3 She saw Damian without planning to when she was at the supermarket.
 - 4 In the final part of the story, the old woman dies.
 - 5 We couldn't get out of the bus because there were people standing in front of us.
 - 6 Normally, how long does it take you to get to work?
 - 7 I can get some milk when I'm going to work.

7 Where would you put these phrases in the sentences and dialogues below?

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|
| in detail | in particular ✓ | on earth | in the end |
| by mistake | in that case | by chance | |

- ▶ If I go to the pharmacy, is there anything / that you want? in particular
- 1 A taxi will be very expensive. ~ OK, let's take the bus.
 - 2 I picked up Ben's scarf because it looked very similar to mine.
 - 3 We met Maxine when we were on holiday in Rome. It was a strange coincidence.
 - 4 What is that man doing with a box over his head?
 - 5 We spent ages waiting for the box office to open, and we went home.
 - 6 My parents want to know about the party. I hope you can remember what happened!

TEST YOURSELF

A Ways of defining

What is it?



1 It's a round, metal **container** used for cooking things in.



2 It's a hard black **substance** that you find below the ground and can burn.



3 It's a **device** for changing channels on a TV.



4 It's a **creature** with big eyes that flies and hunts at night.



5 It's a type of **material** you use to make sheets, clothes, etc.



6 It's an **object** you use to tidy your hair.



7 It's an **article** of clothing you wear over your shoulders.



8 It's the **stuff** you use for washing your hair.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| container | a box, bottle, etc. in which you can store or carry sth |
| substance | a particular type of solid, liquid or gas |
| device | a tool or machine which is designed to do a particular job |
| creature | a living thing such as an animal, insect, etc., but not a plant |
| material [U] | cloth used for making clothes, curtains, etc. |
| object | a solid thing you can see and touch which is not alive SYN thing |
| article | a particular item or separate thing: an article of clothing, household articles, toilet articles |

SPOTLIGHT *stuff*

Stuff [U] is used to refer to something without using its name. We use **stuff** to replace **uncountable nouns**, or plural countable nouns.

- What's the **stuff** in this packet? (e.g. washing powder, sugar, etc.)
- Who left all this **stuff** here? (e.g. books, papers, etc.)

- 1 Match the words in the box with the definitions and pictures above. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

coal owl cotton shawl comb remote control pot shampoo

- 2 Cover the definitions and pictures and complete the sentences.

- ▶ A shawl is an **article** of clothing.
- 1 An owl is a that flies.
- 2 Cotton is a kind of
- 3 A remote control is an electronic
- 4 Coal is a hard, black
- 5 A comb is a plastic
- 6 Shampoo is for washing your hair.
- 7 A pot is a type of

- 3 Cross out any examples which are not correct.

- ▶ **a thing:** umbrella, ~~cow~~, lamp
- 1 **stuff:** children, hair, soap
- 2 **an object:** bee, printer, scissors
- 3 **a creature:** mouse, tree, butterfly
- 4 **a device:** mobile phone, spoon, X-ray machine
- 5 **a container:** towel, bottle, box
- 6 **material:** wool, bag, cotton
- 7 **a substance:** sugar, snow, melon

- 4 Write definitions using words from the glossary.

- ▶ A dishwasher is **an electrical device for washing dishes, knives, forks, etc.**
- 1 Soap is
- 2 A snake is
- 3 A tin is
- 4 A hairdryer is
- 5 A fork is
- 6 Denim is



TEST YOURSELF

B What's it made of?



a rubber tyre



a steel pipe



a leather bag



an iron bell



a stone statue



a silver chain



a gold medal



a cardboard box



a metal robot



a brick wall / a wall made of bricks



a wooden fence / a fence made of wood



a woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool

SPOTLIGHT noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber. A **letter box** is a box for letters.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| ▶ <u>l</u> eather / m <u>e</u> tal S | 3 pipe / t <u>y</u> re | 6 r <u>u</u> ber / w <u>o</u> oden |
| 1 i <u>r</u> on / r <u>o</u> bot | 4 s <u>t</u> atue / <u>ch</u> ain | 7 s <u>o</u> ne / <u>g</u> old |
| 2 f <u>e</u> n <u>c</u> e / <u>c</u> ardboard | 5 b <u>l</u> anket / m <u>e</u> dal | 8 b <u>e</u> ll / w <u>o</u> ollen |

6 Circle the correct word in italics.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ▶ a table made of <u>wood</u> / wool | 4 a <i>wooden</i> / woollen sweater | 8 a steel tyre / fork |
| 1 a rubber <i>boot</i> / bell | 5 an iron <i>blanket</i> / pipe | 9 <i>woollen</i> / gold earrings |
| 2 a <i>stone</i> / leather wall | 6 a <i>silver</i> / brick medal | 10 a <i>wooden</i> / silver chair |
| 3 a <i>rubber</i> / metal fence | 7 a stone <i>robot</i> / statue | |

7 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ A sweater is often made of <u>wool</u> | 4 A ball can be made of |
| 1 Boots, shoes and bags are often made of | 5 A bridge can be made of |
| 2 A building can be made of | 6 Medals and chains can be made of |
| 3 A fence is usually made of | 7 A box can be made of |

8 **ABOUT YOU** Look around you. Write down things that you can see which are made of iron, rubber, steel, leather, stone, silver, gold, cardboard, metal, wood, wool or brick.

- ▶ The computer is made of metal and plastic, the desk is made of wood, my diary is made of cardboard and paper.



TEST YOURSELF

A Using tools and household objects



You use a **hammer**¹ to **bang** a **nail**² into the wall to **hang** a picture on.



You use a **drill**³ to make a **hole**⁴. A hammer and drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**⁵, **pins**⁶, **scissors**⁷ and **cotton**⁸ when you're sewing.



You use **string**⁹ or **rope**¹⁰ to tie things together.



You use **tape**¹¹ or **glue**¹² to stick things together.

SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

Cotton, string, rope, tape and glue are usually uncountable.

- I need **some glue**. (NOT ~~I need a glue.~~)
- Where's the **string**?

1 Complete the words.

▶ n a i l

1 n _____ dl _____

2 st _____ g

3 h _____ mm _____

4 sc _____ rs

5 d _____ ll _____

6 r _____ e

7 h _____ e

8 c _____ t _____ n

9 g _____ e

2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Stick it together with glue / cotton.

1 Sew it with a pin / needle.

2 Cut it with scissors / a drill.

3 Tie it together with rope / nails.

4 Bang it with string / a hammer.

5 Make a hole with cotton / a drill.

6 Stick it together with tape / rope.

7 Sew it with cotton / a tool.

8 **Bang** / **Make** a nail into a piece of wood.

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with tape.

1 I've got a hammer and a drill, but I haven't got any other _____.

2 When you make a skirt for a doll, you cut the fabric with _____, you hold the pieces together with _____, and then you _____ it with a needle and _____.

3 If you break a bowl, you can _____ it together with _____.

4 We used a long piece of _____ to tie the boat to the harbour wall.

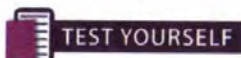
5 A drill is very useful if you need to make a _____ in a wall.

6 I need a hammer to _____ this _____ in the wall.

7 I tied all the keys _____ with a piece of _____.

8 Can you _____ that mirror on the wall over there?

4 ABOUT YOU Which tools and household objects do you have, and which ones do you use a lot? Write a list, or tell another student.



B Household tasks

Oh, dear! The flat is such a **mess**. There's **mud** on the floor and **dirt** and **dust** everywhere. And we really need to **decorate** the hall and stairs.

Yes, we need to **tidy up**, clean the floors and **wipe** all the furniture with a damp **cloth**.

And another thing: the TV **isn't working properly**. We must get someone to **repair** it.

Oh, I don't know – we never watch it. Let's **get rid** of it. By the way, I've noticed that **there's something wrong** with the bathroom tap. It needs **fixing**. Maybe I'll try and **mend** it myself.

| GLOSSARY | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| mess | a lot of untidy or dirty things, all in the wrong place |
| mud | soft, wet earth |
| dirt | a substance that is not clean |
| dust | dry dirt that is like powder |
| decorate | put paint or paper on the walls |
| tidy (sth) up | make a place look better by putting things in the correct place |
| wipe | make sth clean or dry with a <i>cloth</i> |
| cloth | a piece of material used for cleaning things |
| it isn't working | = it's broken, it isn't functioning |
| properly | correctly or well |
| get rid of sth | make yourself free of sth you do not want; throw sth away |
| something wrong with sth | not working well, or not as it should be |

SPOTLIGHT *repair, fix, mend*

Repair, fix and mend all mean 'put something right which is broken or damaged'.

- Can you **repair/fix** the fridge? ■ It took ages to **repair/mend** the roof.

We often use **mend** and **repair** (and NOT **fix**) to talk about repairing clothes.

- I **mended** the hole in my pocket. ■ My shoes need **repairing**.

5 Find the beginning and the end of each word.

DECORATE / WIPEDUSTDIRTMESSFIXCLOTHMENDPROPERLYMUDREPAIR

6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I've bought some paint and wallpaper, so I'm going to / the living room. decorate
- 1 The dishwasher is broken – we need to phone someone to come and it.
- 2 Lula came in after walking in the fields, and now there's all over the floor.
- 3 I don't need this stuff any more – I want to get of it.
- 4 Do you know what is with the radio? I can't hear anything at all.
- 5 Have you got a cloth to the cupboards? They're covered in dust.
- 6 The lamp isn't properly: sometimes it comes on and sometimes it doesn't.
- 7 Do you know how to sew? I need somebody to the hole in my trousers.
- 8 The flat is such a mess, and my mother's coming. Can you up, please?

7 Complete the text.

The house was in very bad condition and in the last storm, the rain had come into all the bedrooms. We paid a builder to ▶ mend the roof for us. The rest of the house was a terrible (1), so first we had to (2) up and remove all the (3) and (4) with a damp cloth. The old carpets were wet and smelled horrible, so we pulled them up and got (5) of them. In the end, it still looked awful so we had to (6) the bedrooms again. Then we realized that there was something (7) with the central heating, and it cost a lot to get it (8) The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (9) – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, so that was another thing that someone had to (10) It was all so expensive!

TEST YOURSELF

43 Buildings

A A new home

My cousin has recently **moved house** to a **property** just outside Edinburgh. It is close to a famous, **historic cottage** and in a beautiful **setting** near the hills. The **entrance** to the house is very **impressive**. The hall **leads to** an enormous sitting room with high **ceilings** and big windows **facing** south, so it feels bright and open. Upstairs, there are four bedrooms, and two of them have **balconies** that look out **onto** the back garden. And a practical feature of the house is the huge **garage** for four cars.



GLOSSARY

move house go to live in a different house or area **move** *n*:
The **move** took us a whole week.
property a building, a piece of land, or both together
historic famous and important in history
cottage a small house, especially in the country
setting the position sth is in
impressive If sth is **impressive**, you admire it because it is very good, large or important.

lead to sth go in a particular direction
ceiling the top part of the inside of a room
face be pointing or looking towards sth: *The kitchen faces west.*
balcony a small platform on which you can stand or sit, just outside an upstairs window
onto used to show that sth faces in a particular direction

1 **Underline one sound in each pair of words which is the same. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

▶ setting / ceiling

1 property / entrance

2 balcony / garage

3 cottage / jam

4 cottage / impressive

5 ceiling / lead

6 face / historic

2 **Complete the dialogues.**

▶ Has the flat got any outdoor space?

1 Where does that path go?

2 Does your aunt live in a big house?

3 Do you leave your car in the street at night?

4 Shall I meet you at the museum?

5 How long have you lived here?

6 You've got a huge balcony!

7 It's so dark in this part of the house.

8 Is the town old?

~ Yes, there's a balcony with some chairs on it.

~ It _____ to the river at the bottom of the garden.

~ No, it's a pretty little _____ in a village.

~ No, we put it in the _____.

~ Yes, let's meet in the _____.

~ Two years, but we're _____ house in the summer.

~ Yes, and it looks out _____ the countryside.

~ That's because it _____ north and gets no sun.

~ Yes, it has a number of _____ buildings that tourists visit.

3 **Complete the questions.**

▶ When did you last move house _____ ?

1 What kind of _____ do you live in?

2 Is it a _____ building?

3 Does it have high _____ in the main rooms?

4 Does it _____ a park, another building or something else?

5 What's the most _____ feature of your house?

6 Is it in an attractive _____, e.g. near the countryside?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 3, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Buildings in a town

A new town for Condolanda

Planning has begun on a new, car-free town which the authorities plan to **locate** on **waste ground**, close to the Condolanda **power plant**. It will consist of houses, parks and public transport facilities, as well as public buildings such as a police station, a secondary school, **town hall**, etc. There will be **commercial** buildings including a **shopping mall**, **office blocks**, **retail stores** and a medical centre. There will also be a large area of modern **apartment blocks**, and **residents** will welcome the **addition** of a nearby **leisure centre**. The **heating** for all the buildings will come at low cost from the power plant.



GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------|--|
| locate | put or build sth in a particular place | retail store | a shop selling goods to customers (retail = selling goods) |
| waste | not used or not suitable for use: waste ground | resident | a person who lives in a particular place |
| power plant | a building where electricity is produced | addition | sth or sb that is added to sth |
| town hall | a large building for local government offices of a town or city | leisure centre | a public building where people can go to do sports and other activities in their free time |
| commercial | connected with buying and selling things | heating | a system for making rooms and buildings warm |
| shopping mall | a large building containing shops, restaurants, etc. ALSO mall , shopping centre | | |

SPOTLIGHT *block*

A **block** is a big building with a lot of offices or flats inside.

- **an office block**
- **an apartment block**
- **a block of flats**

A **block** is also an area of buildings with streets all around it.

- We walked **round the block** to the nearest café.

5 Match words from A with words from B.

A: town ✓ block waste leisure shopping office power retail

B: plant block store mall of flats ground hall ✓ centre ground

▶ town hall

6 Replace the underlined definitions with a word or phrase with the same meaning.

- ▶ We drove round the group of buildings with streets around them. block
- 1 The supermarket group want to place ten new stores in city centres.
 - 2 The property is not suitable for restaurant or retail use.
 - 3 We met at the large indoor place with shops and restaurants.
 - 4 The children's play area is a very welcome extra thing for the residents.
 - 5 The people who live in the area should be told about the plans.
 - 6 We live in an apartment building near the centre of town.
 - 7 I bought the furniture in a shop near my family.
 - 8 You get the application forms from the local government offices.
 - 9 What kind of system for making the room warm do you have?

7 Complete the phrases and sentences.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Where you live, is there:
a power plant? a leisure? a lot of waste?
a shopping? a town? a lot of retail?
- 2 Do you live, or have you ever lived, in an block?
- 3 If so, how many other are/were there in the block?

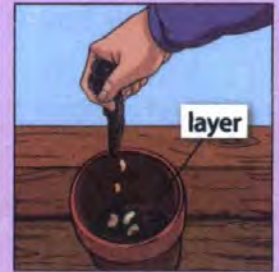
8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or tell another student.



44 How to grow something

How to grow beans

- 1 Put some **soil** in small plant **pots**. Put a few **seeds** in each pot.
- 2 Cover them with a **layer** of soil. Water them, and wait until some **leaves** start to grow.
- 3 When they are large enough, **plant** them in **rows** in the **ground**. If possible, plant them on the **edge** of a **path** where they are easier to look after.
- 4 **Support** the growing **plants** with **sticks**.
- 5 **Pick** the beans when they're ready to eat.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------|---|
| soil | the top layer of earth in which plants grow |
| layer | sth flat that lies on another thing, or that is between other things |
| plant | put plants or seeds in the ground or a pot. A plant is anything that grows from the ground. |
| ground | the surface of the earth |
| support | hold sth/sb in position; stop sth/sb from falling |

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

- ▶ There's a dead ~~leaf~~ on the floor from the tomato plant. leaf
- 1 Put the plant in the boil and water it every day.
- 2 She's planted a bow of potatoes in the garden.
- 3 You can support the plants with little stocks.
- 4 Could you pack some apples from the tree?
- 5 We walked along the bath next to the river.
- 6 Did you plane the seeds indoors or outdoors?
- 7 She put a lager of soil over the seeds.
- 8 I need a couple of pets to plant the seeds in.

2 Correct the sentences.

- ▶ You put plant pots in the soil. No, you put the soil in plant pots.
- 1 Seeds are bigger than plants.
- 2 Plants can support your sticks.
- 3 Leaves grow below the ground.
- 4 You plant seeds in layers of leaves.
- 5 You pick seeds when they've grown.
- 6 The edge of a table is in the middle of the table.
- 7 A path in a garden is where you sit.

3 Read the text again and then cover it. Look at the pictures. Can you remember what to do? Write it down, or tell another student. Then look at the text again to check your answers.



45 Shapes and lines



circle *n*, circular *adj*
round *adj*



square *n*
square *adj*



rectangle *n*
rectangular *adj*



triangle *n*
triangular *adj*



point *n*
pointed *adj*



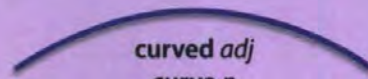
diamond-shaped *adj*



shell-shaped *adj*



straight *adj*



curved *adj*
curve *n*



angle *n*

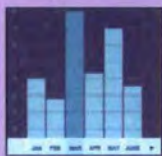


chart *n*



diagram *n*

SPOTLIGHT *shape and shaped*

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**.

- What **shape** is your living room? ~ It's **rectangular**.
- a card **in the shape of** a leaf ■ a pool **in the shape of** a heart
- a **diamond-shaped** button

1 Complete the words.

▶ strai g h t

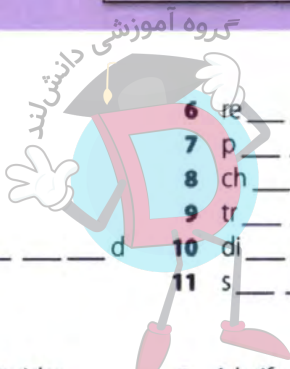
1 p _____ t

2 sq _____

3 cu _____

4 di _____ - s _____

5 ro _____



6 re _____ e

7 p _____ d

8 ch _____

9 tr _____

10 di _____ m

11 s _____ - sh _____

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ A triangle has three straight sides.

1 A tennis ball is _____.

2 A swimming pool is usually _____.

3 A clock is usually in the shape of a _____.

4 A ball has a _____ surface.

5 A shape with all four sides the same length is _____.

6 A knife has a sharp _____ at the end of it.

7 A _____ and a _____ are drawings that explain something.

8 A triangle has three internal _____.

9 A star and a diamond are two different _____.

10 A slice of pizza is usually _____.

3 What can you see in the pictures?

▶ a heart-shaped cake / a cake in the shape of a heart



1 _____



3 _____



5 _____



2 _____



4 _____



6 _____

TEST YOURSELF

46 A painting



The painting *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat shows a typical scene of nineteenth-century leisure and the developing industry in this suburb of Paris. In the foreground, we see a group of workmen on their day off, having an enjoyable afternoon on the bank of the river. In the distance, you can just see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog. We can sense the heat of the summer's day: the bright sunshine, bright colours and pale sky, and the general impression is one of almost silent and peaceful relaxation.

Bathers was painted in the 1880s, but up to then, most paintings were either historical and religious, or portraits of famous ladies and gentlemen. Ordinary people were not shown in art, so this painting was very original and quite shocking. It was painted outside, not in a studio, which was also unusual at that time.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|------------------------|--|-----------------------|--|
| scene | a picture of a place and the things that are happening there | ignore | pay no attention to sb/sth |
| leisure | the time when you do not have to work | sense | get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear |
| industry | the production of goods in factories | heat [U, sing] | the feeling of sth hot OPP cold |
| | industrial adj | bright | having a lot of light OPP dark ; brightness n |
| foreground | the part of a picture that seems nearest to you OPP background : in the foreground/ background | impression | feelings or thoughts that you have about sth/sb with nobody speaking |
| off | not at work or school: have a day/week/ month off | silent | quiet and calm peace n |
| bank | the land along the side of a river | peaceful | quiet and calm peace n |
| in the distance | far away from you | relaxation | time spent resting and being calm relaxing adj |
| just | If you can just see sth, you can only see it with difficulty. | ordinary | not special or unusual ALSO normal |
| | | shocking | making you feel upset, angry or surprised in a very bad way |
| | | studio | a room in which an artist, photographer, etc. works |

SPOTLIGHT *lady and gentleman*

Lady is a polite way of saying 'woman'; **gentleman** is a polite way of saying 'man'. It is more polite to say 'an old lady/gentleman' than to say 'an old woman/man'.

Lady and **gentleman** also describe a man or woman who is polite, well-educated and kind:

■ *She's a real lady. He's a perfect gentleman.*

You may also see **ladies** and **gents** on the doors of public toilets.

1 Look at the underlined sounds. Cross out the word in each group which is different.

- ▶ dark / shocking / peace
- 1 just / ignore / gentleman
- 2 scene / sense / leisure
- 3 relaxation / lady / relaxing
- 4 brightness / impression / peaceful
- 5 peaceful / sense / scene
- 6 shocking / ordinary / ignore
- 7 industry / industrial / distance

2 Look at the picture on page 98. Write your answers.

- ▶ Where are the industrial buildings? In the distance.
- 1 How many people are there in the foreground?
- 2 Where are the boats?
- 3 Where are the men sitting?
- 4 Are they ignoring each other?
- 5 Are the colours dark or bright?
- 6 Is the scene busy or peaceful?
- 7 Are the people ordinary or famous?
- 8 Can you see any ladies?

3 Cover the glossary on page 98. Complete the definitions.

- ▶ ordinary = not special or unusual
- 1 leisure = time when you don't have to
- 2 sense = have a about sth that you can't see or hear
- 3 a morning off = a morning when you have to go to work or school
- 4 scene = a of a place and the things that are happening there
- 5 brightness = the fact of having a lot of
- 6 industry = the production of goods made in
- 7 studio = a room or rooms where an works
- 8 silent = with talking

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

peaceful / peace impression / scene bright ✓ / brightness just / even heat / brightness
 industry / industrial lady / gentleman shocking / relaxing background / foreground

- ▶ The painter Whistler often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
- 1 L S Lowry painted many scenes of factories and factory workers.
- 2 The people in the of the painting must be about five kilometres away.
- 3 It was dark, but we could still feel the – it was 30 degrees at midnight.
- 4 I need some and quiet to finish this book – please don't interrupt me.
- 5 In the picture it's foggy, but you can see the animals in the field.
- 6 The painting tries to create the of light and heat.
- 7 A asked me where the Picasso room was. I told him it was upstairs.
- 8 It's that so many people don't have a home and sleep on the streets.

5 Complete the text.

This painting by an Italian artist shows a ▶ scene of happiness and (1) p..... . There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (2) f....., and in the (3) b....., an older woman is watching them. Behind her, and a long way in the (4) d....., you can (5) j..... see an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, and they are playing in the sunshine. On the right of the painting, there is a man who is (6) i..... the mother and daughter; he seems much more interested in the dog in front of him. They are an (7) o..... working family, and he's probably looking forward to some (8) r..... during his day (9) o.....

6 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who painted it, and do you know when?
- 2 What does it show?
- 3 What do you like about it?



47 The five senses



| SENSE | EXAMPLE | MEANING |
|---------|--|--|
| SIGHT | <i>Look carefully and you can see the bridge over the river.</i> | look turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it see know or notice sth using your eyes |
| | <i>I often watch the birds from the bridge.</i> | watch pay attention to sth for some time |
| HEARING | <i>I can hear something outside.</i> | When you hear sth, sounds come to your ears. |
| | <i>I listened to the news this morning.</i> | When you listen , you are <u>trying</u> to hear sth. |
| | <i>Jason sounded angry this morning.</i> | sound seem in a certain way when you hear sth |
| SMELL | <i>I can smell something strange.</i> | smell notice sth using your nose |
| TASTE | <i>This cake really tastes of coffee.</i> | taste have a particular flavour |
| | <i>Jo tasted the cheese.</i> | taste eat or drink a little of sth to test its flavour |
| TOUCH | <i>When I touched the back wall, it felt a bit wet.</i> | touch put your hand or fingers on sth |
| | <i>Feel this material.</i> | feel used for saying how sth seems to you when you touch, see, smell or experience it |
| | <i>Press the button and wait.</i> | press push sth to make a machine work / a bell ring |

COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS

| VERB + adjective | VERB + like + noun |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>I thought Sarah looked sad.</i> | <i>Simon looks like his brother.</i> |
| <i>The boys sounded pleased when they rang me.</i> | <i>This music sounds like Bach.</i> |
| <i>This soup smells horrible.</i> | <i>Nectarines taste like peaches.</i> |

VERB + as if / as though + clause

There are lots of dark clouds. It looks as if it's going to rain.

I spoke to Alex yesterday. He sounded as though he's enjoying university.

SENSE VERBS AS NOUNS: look, sound and taste

I liked the look of the cottage. = the appearance of it

I love the sound of birds singing.

I don't like the taste of garlic.

SPOTLIGHT can + sense verbs

We don't use *see, hear, smell* or *taste* in the continuous tenses. We often use **can** with sense verbs.

- *I can see several boats in this photo. (NOT I see OR I'm seeing several boats.)*
- *I can't hear what they're saying. (NOT I don't hear...)*

1 Circle the correct verb.

- ▶ She told me to look at / see the board and pay attention.
- 1 What programmes do you *hear / listen to* on the radio?
- 2 What can you *smell / smell like*?
- 3 What can you *hear / listen to* at the moment?
- 4 What does your mobile phone ringtone *sound / sound like*?
- 5 If you put your hand out, can you *feel / touch* another person?
- 6 Just *press / feel* the bell, and somebody should come and help us.
- 7 What can you *see / look at* from where you are sitting?
- 8 Put your hand on your shoes. How do they *touch / feel*?
- 9 What programmes do you usually *watch / look at* on TV?
- 10 When you buy a new jumper, do you always *feel / press* it first?

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- ▶ This soup tastes horrible. There's too much salt in it.
- 1 You have to the switch, and the machine will start working.
- 2 I hear a bird singing. It like a blackbird.
- 3 Why is that man at me? Have I done something wrong?
- 4 Please don't the door: the paint is still wet.
- 5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she ill.
- 6 I didn't know what the fruit was, so I a bit. It was delicious.
- 7 I was trying to to the music, but lots of people were talking.
- 8 Can you something burning? It must be the toast.
- 9 Marco as if he's walked 20 kilometres.
- 10 My head very hot. I think I've got a temperature.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable sense verb and suitable adjective.

- ▶ Molly was happy to take the exam. She sounded confident.
- 1 I washed the floor this morning but it already
- 2 He was awake most of the night, and when he spoke he
- 3 The jam because I put a lot of sugar in it.
- 4 When I put my T-shirt on, it
- 5 When I took the cups out of the dishwasher, they didn't
- 6 They hadn't turned on the heating, so the room
- 7 I think bread when it has just come out of the oven.
- 8 Liam explained exactly how to do it, and it

4 Use like or as if / though, then complete each sentence in a logical way.

- ▶ Why is the man holding out his hand? ~ Not sure, but it looks as if he wants money.
- 1 Did you hear that crash? ~ Yes, it sounds
- 2 What's that woman doing on the floor? ~ It looks
- 3 Can you hear those men shouting at each other? ~ Yes. It sounds
- 4 The team are playing very badly. ~ I know. It looks
- 5 Simon has a plan for the party. ~ Yes, and it sounds
- 6 What's that man doing on the bridge? ~ I don't know, but it looks

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you look like your parents?
- 2 Do you have brothers or sisters that look like you?
- 3 Do you often look as if you're bored?
- 4 Do you usually sound as though you're very confident about things?
- 5 Do you often feel nervous?
- 6 Do you like the taste of garlic?
- 7 Do you like the smell of fried fish?
- 8 Do you feel positive about your future?



48 Crime

A What is crime?



A **crime** is an activity which is **against the law**. For example, if you **steal** someone's **property**, you are **committing a crime** and **breaking the law**. Some **criminal acts** are **minor**, e.g. you get a **fine** for **illegal** parking. For **serious** crimes, especially violent crimes, e.g. the act of **killing** someone, a person can **go to prison** for a long time.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--|---|
| against the law | against the rules of a country SYN illegal OPP legal |
| steal <i>pt stole pp stolen</i> | take sth belonging to sb else without permission |
| property [U] | sth that you have or own, e.g. a computer, jewellery |
| commit a crime | do sth wrong or illegal |
| break the law | do sth illegal/against the law |
| criminal act | [only before a noun] connected with crime a thing that you do a criminal act |
| minor | A minor crime is not bad or important. OPP serious |
| fine | money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong |
| killing | an act of killing sb in a way that was planned |
| go to prison | go to a place where criminals have to stay after they have committed a crime ALSO send sb to prison A person in prison is a prisoner . SYN jail = prison |

1 Find and circle the verbs below.

fine break property violent law steal crime send somebody to prison criminal commit illegal serious

2 Cover the glossary. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ steal / take something belonging to someone without permission **S**
- 1 illegal / against the law
.....
- 2 property / something you own
.....
- 3 the killing of someone / an attack on someone
.....
- 4 a criminal act / a legal act
.....
- 5 commit a crime / break the law
.....
- 6 a minor crime / a serious crime
.....
- 7 prison / jail
.....

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ She did something terrible, and I heard that she **was** **sent** to prison.
- 1 Have you ever a crime?
- 2 There is a lot of behaviour at night: attacks on people and cars, for example.
- 3 In nearly every country, it is not to drive on a public road without a licence.
- 4 Somebody my bike and sold it in the market.
- 5 I heard that has been stolen from several other houses in our street.
- 6 Some escaped from the jail during the fire.
- 7 The attack on the old man was a very serious of violence.
- 8 He committed a crime, and he'll probably go to for a long time.
- 9 He parked in the wrong place. It's only a crime, but it's still the law.
- 10 I've never the law.
- 11 Some young men have started carrying knives, and there have been some terrible in recent years.
- 12 I drove through a NO ENTRY sign and had to pay a of £80.

TEST YOURSELF

B Types of crime

| Crime | Meaning | Verb | Criminal (= a person who commits a crime) |
|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| theft | taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission | <i>He steals cars then sells them.</i> | thief (pl thieves) |
| robbery | stealing from a person or place, often using violence | <i>Two men were planning to rob the bank.</i> | robber |
| burglary | entering a building illegally and stealing things from it | <i>They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.</i> | burglar |
| assault attack | hurting sb physically | <i>He assaulted/attacked a man. She stabbed the man with a knife.</i> | attacker |
| murder | killing sb when it is planned | <i>He murdered his neighbour. He shot her dead with his father's gun.</i> | murderer |

SPOTLIGHT *steal and rob*

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

- Someone has **stolen** my bike.
- I was **robbed** at the football match.
- Thieves **stole** €2,000 from the shop.
- They **robbed** the museum last night.

4 Cross out any wrong answers. Be careful: more than one answer may be wrong.

- ▶ *Rob, thief, attack* and *steal* are all verbs.
- 1 *Theft, murder, robbery* and *burglary* are all ways of getting property.
- 2 *Theft, parking, burglary* and *assault* are all crimes.
- 3 *Shoot, assault, stab* and *break in* are all ways of attacking people physically.
- 4 *Assault, burglary, theft* and *murder* are acts of violence.
- 5 *Murderer, thief, attacker* and *robbery* are all criminals.

5 True or false? Write T or F. Correct the false sentences.

- ▶ You can steal property. T
- 1 If you murder somebody, they're dead. _____
- 2 You stab somebody with a gun. _____
- 3 A burglar breaks into a home. _____
- 4 A criminal is a person. _____
- 5 You steal a bank. _____
- 6 Theft is stealing. _____
- 7 You shoot somebody with a knife. _____

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The thief stole _____ \$1,000.
- 1 Two robbers _____ into the museum and _____ three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and _____ him in the chest.
- 2 The man is a _____, and has spent much of his life in prison. It's mostly for _____: he steals computers and things like that.
- 3 Someone _____ me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would _____ me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
- 4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for _____ his wife. He bought a gun and _____ her three times while she was asleep.
- 5 A _____ broke into our house and took jewellery and cameras.
- 6 The three men _____ that bank because it was in a very quiet area.
- 7 _____ from cars has gone down in recent years because of better security. However, _____ have increased because more young people have knives.
- 8 The two men took money from the post office. The _____ happened at 4 p.m.



TEST YOURSELF

A A police investigation



GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| report | give information about sth that has happened |
| victim | a person who has been robbed, injured, killed, etc. |
| investigate | try to find out about sth investigation <i>n</i> |
| witness | a person who sees sth happen, e.g. a crime or an accident |
| take place | happen |
| catch <i>pt/pp caught</i> | find and hold sb |
| responsible (for sth) | being the person who made sth happen |
| arrest | When the police arrest sb, they take them to a police station to question them about a crime. |
| charge | If the police charge sb, they are saying officially that they believe this person committed a crime: <i>He was charged with murder.</i> |
| court | the place where <i>trials</i> (see part B) happen and crimes are judged |

SPOTLIGHT *evidence and proof*

Evidence [U] can be facts, signs or objects that make you think something is true. **Proof** [U] is something that shows that an idea about a crime, an event, etc. is true. **prove** *v.*

- The police collected **evidence** so they could **prove** the man was guilty.

1 Answer the questions. Some questions have more than one answer.

- ▶ Who is caught? The person that the police believe may be responsible for the crime.
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 Who takes photos? | 5 Who sees the crime take place? |
| 2 Who is charged? | 6 Who usually reports the crime? |
| 3 Who investigates the crime? | 7 Who is arrested? |
| 4 Who is affected by the crime? | 8 Who goes to court? |

2 Circle the correct answer.

When a robbery has **taken place** / **reported**, someone will (1) **investigate** / **report** it to the police. (2) **Victims** / **Witnesses** will then tell the police what happened to them, so that the police can begin to (3) **investigate** / **charge** the crime. They may take photos where the robbery (4) **took place** / **caught**. If possible, they will (5) **report** / **arrest** the person who they think is responsible. If they get enough (6) **evidence** / **victims**, they will (7) **catch** / **charge** the person, and he/she will have to go to (8) **court** / **the police station**.

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A group of young people have been arrested for several crimes in the area.
- I saw the robbery and it to the police.
 - The police think he committed the crime, but unfortunately they can't it.
 - Two men were with robbery.
 - The police the man leaving the shop. He had over £1,000 on him, so they him immediately and took him to the police station for questioning.
 - The police carried out a very detailed to find the people responsible.
 - They are looking for who saw what happened.
 - One problem is that often suffer for a long time after a crime has place.
 - They charged the woman with the crime and she will appear in on Monday.



TEST YOURSELF

B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder, are tried in court by a judge and jury. The purpose of the trial is to examine the evidence and determine whether somebody is innocent or guilty of the crime that they have been charged with. That is the jury's decision. If the person is guilty, the judge will then decide the correct punishment for the crime.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| try | ask sb questions in court to decide if they have done sth illegal |
| purpose (of sth) | the aim or intention of sth |
| trial | the process in a court of law where a judge, and often a jury, listens to the evidence and decides if sb is guilty of a crime or not |
| examine | look carefully at sth/sb examination n |
| determine | discover the facts about sth |
| innocent | If you are innocent , you haven't done anything wrong. OPP guilty |
| punishment | what sb must suffer for doing sth wrong, e.g. go to prison punish v |

SPOTLIGHT *whether (... or not)*

- We use **whether** to talk about choosing between two things:
I don't know **whether** to go **or not**.
I don't know **whether** to buy that suit **or not**.
- Whether** can also mean **if**:
She asked me **whether** I was Spanish.

4 True or false about British courts? Write T or F. Correct the false sentences.

- ▶ A trial decides that somebody is guilty. **F** - A trial decides whether somebody is innocent or guilty.
- Trials take place in a court.
 - A trial looks at all the evidence.
 - A judge determines whether the person is guilty or not.
 - The jury must listen to all the evidence.
 - If the person is innocent, they will go to prison.
 - The jury decides the punishment.

5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- The jury decided that the person was guilty.
- The police charged this person.
- Somebody committed a crime.
- The person went to court.
- The police arrested somebody.
- The jury listened to the evidence.
- The police investigated the crime.
- The victim reported the crime.
- The judge decided on the punishment.

| |
|---|
| |
| |
| 1 |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The person on trial may be guilty or **innocent**.
- I sat in _____ for three days while a man was being _____ for the crime.
 - If you are guilty of a crime, the _____ could be years in prison.
 - The police _____ all the evidence they had.
 - A _____ has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
 - We had to decide _____ to believe the witness or not.
 - The _____ have to _____ whether the person is innocent or _____.
 - The _____ of the investigation was to find who was responsible for the murder.
 - The _____ lasted for six days, and at the end, the _____ sent the woman to prison for two years.



50 Health issues

A Diseases of the young

In the developed world, fewer children now **suffer from** the **diseases** which are still a problem in developing countries, but the number of young people **around the world** with **asthma** has increased. There are **various** reasons for this, but doctors believe that **breathing difficulties** are often caused by **allergies** to cigarette smoking, certain types of food or pollution. There has also been an increase in **mental health issues** among **the young**, and these are often very hard to **treat**.

SPOTLIGHT *disease and illness*

An **illness** [C] is a medical problem. **Illness** [U] is a period when you are not well. **(A) disease** [C,U] is a serious physical medical problem, and quite often spreads from person to person, e.g. typhoid. It can affect a particular part of the body.

- **heart disease**
- **skin disease**

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| the young [pl] | young people considered as a group |
| suffer (from sth) | have the experience of sth bad |
| around the world | everywhere; all parts of the world |
| asthma | a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe |
| various | several different: <i>He has various illnesses.</i> variety <i>n</i> |
| breathing | taking in and letting out air through your nose and mouth |
| difficulty | a problem; sth that is not easy to do |
| allergy | a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill: <i>a nut allergy allergic (to sth)</i> <i>adj</i> |
| mental | of or in your mind: <i>mental illness</i> |
| issue | an important problem that people talk about |
| treat | try to make a sick person well again treatment <i>n</i> |

1 Match a word from Box A with a word from Box B to form six more phrases.

| | | | | | |
|---------|-----------|--------|--------------------------|-------------|----------------|
| skin ✓ | breathing | mental | difficulty | from asthma | illnesses |
| suffer | allergic | | to certain types of food | disease ✓ | a sick patient |
| various | treat | | illness | | |

▶ skin disease

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
- 1 Some people have an _____ to milk or nuts. It can affect their breathing.
 - 2 Taking in and letting out air through the nose and mouth is called _____.
 - 3 She's got _____ allergies: shellfish and nuts, and also to cat fur.
 - 4 An illness that spreads from person to person is often called a _____.
 - 5 Asthma is a common disease amongst the _____ in Europe and the USA.
 - 6 Care for older people is a major _____ for many countries in the western world.
 - 7 Doctors _____ many diseases with a _____ of drugs.
 - 8 My sister is _____ to certain drugs, such as aspirin and some antibiotics.

3 Complete the text.

My younger brother has never had very good health. He has had ▶ asthma all his life, which gives him serious (1) _____ problems, and sometimes he also has (2) _____ sleeping. As a child, doctors (3) _____ him for a skin (4) _____, which made his skin red and often painful. Fortunately, he grew out of that, but recently he has (5) _____ from periods of (6) _____ illness, which may be related to his (7) _____ physical problems. The main (8) _____ for his mental (9) _____ has been various drugs to help him manage his emotions better.

TEST YOURSELF

B An ageing population

In the western world, people are living longer. This is good news, but an **ageing** population also creates social and **economic** problems, and we have to **limit** how much we spend. Who **cares for the elderly**, and **equally** important, who pays for that **care**? Should the government ask everyone to **save** more money for their **old age**, so they can pay for their own care? Should we also ask **working** people to pay for the elderly through higher **taxes**? One answer, of course, is to help older people to keep up their **strength**, and to stay **fit for as long as possible**.

SPOTLIGHT as ... as possible

You use this structure to emphasize an adjective or adverb.

- I want to work **as long as possible** / **I possibly can**. (= the longest time possible)
- I'll do it **as soon as possible**. (= at the earliest possible moment)
- He wants it **as quickly as possible**. (= in the quickest possible time)
- I go there **as much as possible**. (= the most I can)

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|--------------------------|--|---------------------|---|
| ageing | becoming older age v | the elderly | a polite way of saying old people |
| economic | connected with the way people and countries spend money and make, buy and sell things (the) economy n | equally | in the same way |
| limit sth (to sb) | keep sth below a certain amount, size, degree, etc. limit (on sth) n | save (money) | keep or not spend money so you can spend it later |
| care for sb | do the things for sb that they need. A person who cares for a sick or old person, usually at home, is a carer . care n | old age | the part of your life when you are old |
| | | working | employed; having a job: working mothers |
| | | tax | money that you have to pay to the government |
| | | strength | how strong you are |
| | | fit | healthy and strong fitness n |

4 Match words from Box A with words from Box B.

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------|-----------|----------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| A | working ✓ | save | as soon | B | mothers ✓ | the elderly | as possible |
| | care for | limit | an ageing | | what we spend | age | population |

▶ working mothers

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- ▶ His mother has aged since her illness. AGE
- 1 My mother was a for a number of years. CARE
- 2 Our country has some serious problems. ECONOMY
- 3 You need your when you get ill. STRONG
- 4 is very important as you get older. FIT
- 5 He needs a job without stress, but money is important. EQUAL
- 6 Good public transport affects everyone, not just people. WORK
- 7 I'll come as soon as I can. POSSIBLE

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I don't like work. I'd like to stop working as soon as possible. **ABOUT YOU**
- 1 Countries with populations may need to employ more foreign workers.
- 2 I don't want to stop work: I want to work as long as
- 3 One problem is that young people are not interested in the problems of the
- 4 In my country children often for their elderly parents if they get sick.
- 5 I can't think of any good things about old
- 6 I do a lot of exercise so that I can stay for as as possible.
- 7 I think working people should pay more to help the elderly. There is a to how much old people can contribute.

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Do you think the sentences in Exercise 6 are true for you? And do you agree with them?

- ▶ That's not true for me. I enjoy work and would like to work until I'm no longer able to.

TEST YOURSELF

A The British political system

In the British political **system**, **elections** must be **held** every five years, though it can be sooner than that in some situations. The UK is divided into 650 political areas, and in each area people **vote for one** person **representing** the **political party** they want to see **in power**. The **politician** with the most **votes** becomes the **Member of Parliament** (known as an **MP**) for that area. **Parliament**, therefore, has 650 MPs, and the party with the **majority** of MPs usually forms the **government**. The leader of that party also becomes **prime minister**.

SPOTLIGHT *politics*

Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with government. A **politician** is somebody who works in politics, and a **political party** is a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election, e.g. in the UK, the **Labour Party** and the **Conservative Party**.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|---|---|
| system | a set of ideas or rules for organizing sth |
| election [C, U] | the time of choosing a Member of Parliament, President, etc. by voting elect v |
| hold an election | organize an election |
| vote (for sb/sth) | choose sb/sth in an election vote n |
| represent | speak or do sth in place of another person or a group |
| in power | in political control of a country |
| Member of Parliament (pl Members of Parliament) | a person who has been elected to represent people from a particular area in Parliament ALSO MP |
| parliament | the group of people elected to make the laws in a country |
| majority | the largest number or part of sth OPP minority |
| government | the group of people in control of a country |
| prime minister (OR PM) | the leader of the government in some countries |

1 True or false about the British system? Write T or F. Correct the sentences that are false.

- ▶ In the UK, elections must be held every four years. **F - In the UK, elections must be held every five years.**
- 1 Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with governing a country, a town, etc.
- 2 People can only vote for one person in UK elections.
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each area.
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government.
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister.
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs usually forms the government.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
- 1 How often does your country elections for parliament?
- 2 My uncle was as an MP a few years ago.
- 3 In the UK, the Labour Party was in from 1997 to 2010.
- 4 Who did you for in the last election?
- 5 from all the political parties agreed with the idea.
- 6 She had over 50% of the, so it was a that voted for her.
- 7 The Labour party is one of the main in the UK.
- 8 Politicians the people who elect them.
- 9 Is the British political similar to the one in your country?

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections?
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment?
- 3 How long have they been in power?
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party?
- 5 How many people are there in parliament?



TEST YOURSELF

B Political objectives

The government is now preparing for the next election, and today the prime minister will **focus on** education and the **need for** more young people to go to university.

The Transport Minister is also **due to announce** today a new transport **policy**, including special **measures** which aim to **persuade** drivers to leave their cars at home.

The government has already said that one of its **objectives** will be to **put forward** ideas for new laws to **protect** immigrant workers.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|--|--|
| focus (on sth) | give all your attention to sth focus <i>n</i> |
| need (for sth) | a situation in which you must have or do sth |
| due to do sth | arranged or expected |
| announce | say sth officially and in public announcement <i>n</i> |
| policy | a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc. |
| measure (usually <i>pl</i>) | an official action that is done for a special reason |
| persuade sb (to do sth) | make sb think sth or do sth by giving them good reasons |
| objective | sth that you want and plan to do SYN aim; aim <i>v</i> |
| put sth forward | suggest sth for discussion |
| law | a rule of a country that says what people may or may not do |
| protect | keep sb/sth safe protection <i>n</i> |
| immigrant | a person who comes from one country to another country to live there immigration <i>n</i> |

4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ A law is something that people **often do in a country / must do in a country**
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in **public / private**.
- 2 If you persuade somebody to do something, they **do / don't do** it.
- 3 If you protect somebody, you **keep them safe / support and help them**.
- 4 If you focus on something, you **give it your attention / decide to do something**.
- 5 Immigration is the process of coming to **visit / live in** another country.
- 6 If you put something forward, you **suggest / vote for** it.
- 7 An objective is something you **want / don't like**.
- 8 A policy is **a plan agreed by a group / a political idea you like**.

5 Complete these sentences about language.

- ▶ The noun from the verb **protect** is **protection**.
- 1 The noun from the verb **announce** is
- 2 The noun from the verb **focus** is
- 3 The preposition that follows **focus** is
- 4 Another word for an **aim** is an
- 5 **Persuade** is followed by an object and an
- 6 The noun **need** can be followed by the preposition

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ The government has admitted the **need** for a change in its education policy.
- 1 The party has agreed a new p..... on house building, and will a..... it tomorrow in parliament.
- 2 The number of i..... coming to this country from Eastern Europe has fallen.
- 3 The prime minister still has to p..... many of her MPs to agree with her farming policy.
- 4 This week, MPs will consider m..... to reduce air pollution in cities as soon as possible.
- 5 The main a..... of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- 6 The prime minister is d..... to announce a general election for 18 May.
- 7 In the speech, the prime minister will f..... on health issues and the n..... for more hospital beds.
- 8 The new law gives workers more p..... from bad employers.



TEST YOURSELF

52 War and peace

A War

... The **bomb exploded** in the city centre killing ten people and **injuring** many more.

... **Soldiers fought** a terrible **gun battle**, **firing** for two hours at **enemy fighters** ...

... The enemy **leader** managed to **escape**, but most of his soldiers were either killed or handed in their **weapons**, and the **army** is now **in control** of the situation.



soldiers

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| bomb | a thing that explodes and hurts people or damages things bomb v |
| explode | burst with force and a loud noise explosion n SYN go off |
| injure | hurt sb, often in a fight or accident |
| fight pt/pp fought | use physical strength, guns, weapons, etc. against sb/sth. Sb who fights is a fighter . fight n |
| battle | a fight between armies in a war gun battle |
| fire (at/on sb/sth) | shoot bullets from a gun |
| enemy | the people your army or country is fighting against |
| leader | a person who controls a group or team |
| escape | get free from sb/sth SYN get away |
| weapon | sth, such as a gun or knife, that is used to kill or injure people |
| army | a large group of soldiers who fight on land in a war |
| be in control (of sth) | have the power or ability to deal with sth |

1 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ Twelve soldiers | b | a managed to escape. |
| 1 They're in control | ..... | b were injured. ✓ |
| 2 Soldiers fought | ..... | c explosion. |
| 3 The planes bombed | ..... | d of the city. |
| 4 Two enemy fighters | ..... | e a long battle. |
| 5 The battle | ..... | f the area around the city. |
| 6 There was a loud | ..... | g lasted several days. |

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| ▶ They were <u>physically hurting</u> each other. | <u>fighting</u> |
| 1 They were the <u>men we fought against</u>. | ..... |
| 2 She is the <u>one who controls the group</u>. | ..... |
| 3 It was a large <u>thing that explodes</u>. | ..... |
| 4 He's a <u>member of the army</u>. | ..... |
| 5 They found <u>bombs, guns and knives</u>. | ..... |
| 6 Where did the bomb <u>go off</u>? | ..... |

3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ How many soldiers are in the army? ~ Over 10,000.
- 1 Why did the people run away? ~ Because the army was _____ at them.
- 2 How long has your brother been in the _____? ~ He's been a soldier for ten years.
- 3 When did the _____ go off? ~ Early, and it was a very loud _____.
- 4 Did any of the soldiers die in the _____? ~ No, but two were badly _____.
- 5 Have they caught the enemy _____? ~ Yes. He tried to _____, but they got him.
- 6 Is the army in _____ of the situation now? ~ Yes, the _____ fighters have gone.
- 7 Did the army find any _____? ~ Yes, lots of guns and explosive devices.
- 8 Did the soldiers attack? ~ Yes, they _____ a short battle with enemy _____.



B Peace

The region has been **at war** for several years now. All the countries **involved** have been **holding talks** for over a year to try and end the **fighting**. The first **attempt** at **peace** was **rejected** **within** days, but further talks at **reaching an agreement** have taken place, and now it seems that the two **sides** are more **determined** to achieve a **lasting** peace.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| at war | fighting with weapons against different groups or countries, usually for a long time |
| involved (in sth) | being part of sth or connected with sth |
| involve v | |
| talks pl | formal discussions between countries and their governments |
| fighting | the activity of fighting against the enemy |
| attempt (at sth) | trying to do sth that is difficult attempt v |
| peace | a time when there is no war between people or countries |
| reject | say that you do not want sb/sth rejection n |
| within | before the end of |
| agreement | a contract or decision that two or more people have made together |
| side | one of two groups who fight or play a game against each other |
| determined | very certain that you want to do sth |
| lasting | continuing for a long time |

SPOTLIGHT verb + noun

Certain verbs are often used together with certain nouns.

- **reach** an agreement
- **make** an attempt
- **hold** talks
- **go** to war

4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

- If you hold **talks**, you have formal / informal discussions with people.
- If something happens **within** a week, it will happen in *less* / more than a week.
 - If you **reject** something, you say you *want* / don't want it.
 - If you are **involved** in something, you are *part* / not part of it.
 - If you make an **attempt** at doing something, you *try* / fail to do it.
 - If you are **at war** with another country, the *fighting has not ended* / the sides are involved in talks.
 - If you are **determined**, you are *sure* / not sure that you want to do something.
 - If something is **lasting**, it continues for a *short* / long time.
 - If you **reach an agreement** with somebody, you have *made a decision with them* / had an argument with them.

5 Complete the text.



The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. The two ► sides have (1) an agreement on several occasions in the past, but so far it has never been a (2) peace. Last month, however, the two leaders (3) in the war agreed to stop the (4) and hold new (5) in a final (6) to achieve peace. They say they are (7) to reach an (8) this time. But if either side walks away and (9) these latest proposals for peace, they may still be at (10) for many years.

6 Complete the sentences in a logical way. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

- They want to achieve a lasting peace/solution
- Both sides want to reach an
 - I'm going to make one final
 - I should finish my report within
 - The two sides have agreed to hold
 - She rejected my
 - I'm determined to



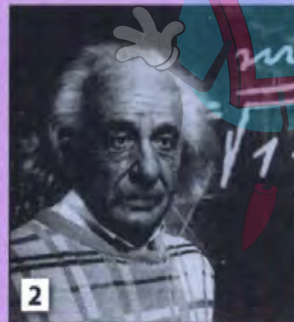
TEST YOURSELF

53 Events in history

| Date | Event |
|------|---|
| 1909 | Robert Peary claimed he was the first person to reach the North Pole, but later that claim was challenged . |
| 1911 | The Norwegian, Roald Amundsen ¹ , led the first Antarctic expedition that successfully reached the South Pole. |
| 1915 | Einstein ² developed his Theory of Relativity over a decade , finally completing it in 1915. |
| 1923 | Turkey became a republic , and Mustafa Kemal Atatürk became its first president . |
| 1928 | Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin. |
| 1947 | India gained independence . |
| 1953 | After the death of King George VI, his daughter Princess Elizabeth became Queen Elizabeth II ³ . |
| 1986 | An explosion at the Chernobyl nuclear power station in Ukraine became one of the world's worst man-made disasters. |
| 1989 | Charles Babbage invented the first mechanical computer in the early 19 th century. The invention of the World Wide Web was in 1989 by Tim Berners-Lee. This was made available to the public in 1991. |
| 1990 | Nelson Mandela ⁴ was released from prison. Mandela's life was one of constant challenges . He later became president of South Africa. |



1 Roald Amundsen



2 Albert Einstein



3 Queen Elizabeth II



4 Nelson Mandela

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|-------------------|---|--------------------------|--|
| claim | say that sth is true claim <i>n</i> | gain independence | become free from control by another country SYN become independent |
| challenge | say that you think sb/sth is wrong | nuclear | using the energy that is produced when the central part of an atom is broken: nuclear power |
| lead | control a group of people. A person who leads is the leader . | power station | a place where electricity is produced |
| expedition | a journey to do or find sth special | invent | make or think of sth for the first time invention <i>n</i> |
| develop | grow slowly, increase, or change into sth else; make sb/sth do this development <i>n</i> | available | ready for you to use, have or see |
| theory | an idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain sth | release | allow sb to be free release <i>n</i> |
| decade | a period of ten years | challenge | sth new or difficult that forces you to make a lot of effort |
| republic | a country with a president, but with no king or queen | | |
| president | the leader of a country with no king or queen | | |
| discover | find sth that nobody had found before discovery <i>n</i> | | |

SPOTLIGHT royal families

A **royal** family is one connected with a **king** or **queen**. A man who **rules** a country (= has power over a country) is a king; a woman who rules is a queen. The son or grandson of a king or queen is a **prince**; the daughter or granddaughter is a **princess**. A country that has a king or queen is a **monarchy**.

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Two words have two possible stress patterns.

Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| ▶ release | 3 republic | 6 monarchy | 9 development |
| 1 decade | 4 develop | 7 available | 10 independence |
| 2 princess | 5 president | 8 discovery | 11 nuclear |

2 Find pairs of words in the box that often go together.

| | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-----------|----------|------------|----------|
| prince ✓ | king | invention | monarchy | decade | nuclear |
| discovery | power | queen | century | princess ✓ | republic |

- ▶ prince/princess

3 Cover the glossary. Complete the definitions.

- ▶ A monarchy is a country with a king or queen.
- If you become free from control by another country, you become
 - The daughter of a king or queen is a
 - A country with no king or queen is a
 - A family connected with kings or queens is a family.
 - The leader of a country with no king or queen is usually the
 - An idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain something is a
 - A journey to do or find something special is an
 - Something new or difficult to do that forces you to make a lot of effort is a
 - A place where electricity is produced is a

4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Margrethe II of Denmark became queen after her father King Frederick IX died in 1972.
- Martin Cooper the mobile phone in April 1973, and a decade later the first Motorola mobile phones were made to the public.
 - For a long time, people believed that Christopher Columbus America, but in recent years many people have that belief.
 - Prince William is a member of the British family.
 - Ronald Reagan was elected of the US in 1980.
 - In 1975, Juan Carlos became of Spain, and he until 2014.
 - Argentina gained in 1816, and Brazil became in 1822.
 - Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn spent eight years in prison before he was in 1953.
 - Freud believed children went through different stages of sexual before they became adults.
 - In 1911, Captain Scott a British to reach the South Pole, but the Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen got there first. Scott died in Antarctica soon after.
 - In 2011, a serious accident happened at a power station in Fukushima, Japan.

5 Complete these questions about events in world history.

- ▶ Chuck Berry is the father of rock'n roll, but who is the king of rock'n roll? **ABOUT YOU** Elvis Presley
- Who published his of evolution in 1859?
 - King Abdullah II is married to Rania. Which country does he rule?
 - Who was of the US from 2009-2017?
 - In which did people start using Facebook? Was it the 2000s or the 2010s?
 - Who was Diana, of Wales? She was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
 - Which country became a in 1917 after being ruled by the Romanovs?
 - Who is the Supreme of North Korea?
 - Who he was the first person to climb Mount Everest in 1953? (Most people still believe it, but some people have that)
 - Who a theory of the psyche involving the ego and super ego?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5, or answer them with another student. If you don't know any answers, use the internet to help you.



54 Social issues

A Young and old

What's wrong with young people?

Some older people complain they have a **fear** of going out at night because of increasing **violence** and the number of young people who are **drunk**. But is it right for them to **be frightened**?

It's true that the number of reported **violent** crimes has increased, but also true that the police have become more **expert** at **recording** crime. Their enquiries are more successful because victims seem more **willing** to report crime. This may **account for** the increase.

There is also a growing **trend** for young people to **consume** less alcohol now than ten or fifteen years ago. Why? It's probably a **combination** of **factors**. Alcohol is expensive, it makes you lose control, and there seems to be a cultural move away from heavy drinking of alcohol.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| fear | the feeling you have when you think sth bad may happen |
| violence | behaviour which damages sth or harms sb physically violent adj |
| drunk | If a person is drunk , they have had too much alcohol. drunk n |
| frighten | make sb feel suddenly afraid |
| expert | knowing a lot about sth expert n |
| record | write notes about things so that you can remember them later record n (Note the different stress in the verb and the noun.) |
| enquiry | an official process to find out about sth |
| willing (to do sth) | ready and happy to do sth OPP unwilling |
| account for sth | explain or give a reason for sth |
| trend | a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing |
| consume formal | eat or drink |
| combination | two or more things joined together |
| combine v | |
| factor | one of the things that causes or affects sth |

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- ▶ He's unwilling to help. B
- 1 He's drunk.
- 2 I got expert advice.
- 3 He's very violent.
- 4 They frightened me.
- 5 He's willing to help.
- 6 There's no record of the attack on the victim.
- 7 She has a fear of speaking in public.

2 True, false or don't know? Write T, F or don't know. Correct any false sentences.

- ▶ All older people have a fear violence on the streets at night. F - Some older people have a fear of violence on the streets at night.
- 1 The number of reported violent crimes has increased.
- 2 The number of violent crimes has increased.
- 3 The police are better at recording crimes.
- 4 Victims are less willing to report crimes.
- 5 Young people get drunk more.
- 6 Young people drink less only because of cost.

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Police are trying to stop violent attacks on medical staff.
- 1 There is a growing _____ for young people to move to the big cities.
- 2 The robbers were prepared to use _____ if we didn't give them our money.
- 3 How do you _____ for the increase in the number of young people carrying knives?
- 4 People don't usually take drugs for just one reason: it's usually a _____ of factors.
- 5 I spoke to a professor who is an _____ on poverty in large cities.
- 6 People who _____ a lot of alcohol and get _____ are a danger to society.
- 7 People have a growing _____ of terrorism in many countries.
- 8 Doctors must keep clear and accurate _____ of their discussions with patients.
- 9 The police are very busy with a murder _____ at the moment.

TEST YOURSELF

B Charities

Charities: good or bad?

The number of **charities** in the UK is enormous, with more than 600 registered **cancer** charities alone, and more than 200 charities for **homeless** people in London. Most of these charities depend on **donations** to **raise money**, and often on **volunteers** (many of whom are **retired**) to do the work. While the **passion** of so many people who want to help is wonderful, this situation is not ideal. More and more charities are now doing similar work and **competing with** each other for money. **As a consequence**, they **are forced to** spend more on marketing, **rather than** actually helping people. This means some people are losing confidence in charities and giving them less money. What should **society** do about this?

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| charity | an organization that collects money to help people who need it |
| cancer | a very dangerous illness that can affect many parts of the body: <i>Smoking can cause lung cancer.</i> |
| homeless | without a place to live |
| donation | giving sth, especially money, to people who need it donate v |
| raise money | get money from other people for a particular purpose |
| volunteer | a person who is willing to do a job without being paid, volunteer v; voluntary adj |
| retired | no longer working because you have reached a particular age or because you are sick |
| passion | a very strong feeling for sth and interest in it passionate adj |
| compete (with sb) | try to win a race or competition against sb |
| consequence | a result of sth that has happened: as a consequence |
| force sb (to do sth) | make sb do sth that they do not want to do in the place of; instead of |
| rather than | |
| society | a large group of people who live in the same country or area and have the same ideas about sth |

گروه آموزش

4 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ charity 2 consequence 4 donation 6 passionate 8 society
1 compete 3 homeless 5 volunteer 7 voluntary 9 retired

5 Cover the glossary. Complete the explanations.

- ▶ **Cancer** is a very dangerous illness.....
1 A **charity** is an organization that people.
2 A **passion** is a very strong
3 If you do one thing **rather than** something else, you do it of something else.
4 A **homeless** person has to live.
5 A **volunteer** does a job without being
6 A **consequence** of something is a of something.
7 A **retired** person is no longer

7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Is it a paid job? ~ No, she's a volunteer for a charity.....
1 Do you have to attend the training courses? ~ No, they're
2 She loves working for *The Cats & Dogs Home*. ~ I know. She's always had a for animals, and she enjoys for charities.
3 Do they get money from the government? ~ No, they have to it themselves.
4 Are they the only charity in this sector? ~ No, they have to with other charities.
5 How do they get their money? ~ It comes from from companies.
6 Do you ever money to charities? ~ Yes, I do sometimes.
7 What can we do about homeless people in today's? ~ Build homes for them.
8 Why are the children not going to school? ~ To try and the government to take action on climate change.

ABOUT YOU

7 **ABOUT YOU** Can you think of a famous cancer or other charity in your country? Do charities compete with other charities? What is the solution to the problem expressed in the text above? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

55 Irregular verbs

A Bad things happen ...

The burglar **set off** the burglar **alarm**, which woke everyone up, but he **ran away** before we saw him.

I **set** my alarm clock last night, but I still **overslept**. I **sprang out of** bed and tripped over my shoes.

Last week it was so cold that our pipes **froze** in the bathroom, and then they **burst**. It made a terrible mess, but fortunately my husband was at home and **dealt with** it.

We were on the lake when our little boat **sank**. We managed to swim to the shore and then **lay** there exhausted, not sure what to do. As it **grew** darker, we started to feel cold and miserable.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--|--|
| set sth off pt/pp set | do sth that starts a reaction |
| alarm | a machine that warns you of a danger by ringing a loud bell: a fire/burglar alarm |
| run away pt ran pp run | escape from somewhere |
| set pt/pp set | prepare or arrange sth for a particular purpose |
| oversleep pt/pp overslept | sleep longer than you should have done |
| spring pt sprang pp sprung | jump or move quickly: spring out of bed / to your feet |
| freeze pt froze pp frozen | become hard and often change into ice |
| burst pt burst pp burst | break open suddenly and violently, usually because there is too much pressure inside |
| deal with sth/sb pt/pp dealt | take action in a situation in order to solve a problem |
| sink pt sank pp sunk | go down, or make sth go down under the surface of a liquid or soft substance |
| lie pt lay pp lain | be in a flat or horizontal position, not standing or sitting |
| grow pt grew pt grown | become: grow dark/old/bored |

1 Circle the past participles.

froze ransprung grew run overslept burst dealt sank setsprung frozen lay grown

2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ What time did you get up? ~ I set the alarm for 7.00 but didn't get up until 7.30.
- 1 What was the cause of the accident? ~ A tyre _____, and the car went out of control.
- 2 Why were you late for work? ~ Because I _____.
- 3 The water in the dog's bowl has _____! ~ That's not surprising: the temperature fell below zero last night.
- 4 What happened to the boat? ~ It _____ because there was a hole in the bottom of it.
- 5 Has Rina solved the problem with the keys? ~ Yes, she's _____ it.
- 6 Did you feel tired when you woke up? ~ No, I _____ bed.
- 7 Where has Freddie gone? ~ He was frightened of the horse and _____.
- 8 Was it dark when you drove here this morning? ~ Yes, but it _____ light as I got nearer.
- 9 Were you tired after the journey? ~ Yes, very. I _____ on my bed for an hour and then felt much better.
- 10 Did you hear the fire _____? ~ No, I wasn't at home at the time. Is everything OK?

3 Complete the questions with a suitable verb.

Have you ever:

- ▶ overslept before an important exam or meeting? _____
- _____ out of bed and injured yourself? _____
- _____ a burglar alarm or a fire alarm? _____
- had to _____ with a difficult boss, colleague or student? _____
- _____ a child's balloon? _____
- _____ an alarm clock for the wrong time? _____

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Action verbs



1 He **hung** up his coat.



2 She **hid** behind the sofa.



3 He **threw** the ball.



4 She **shook** the bottle.



5 He **bent** the metal.



6 She **spilt** her drink.



7 I **lit** a fire.



8 Hannah **led** us up the hill.



9 The referee **blew** his whistle.



10 She **tore** the picture into pieces.



11 He **shone** a torch into my eye.



12 She **laid** the baby on the bed.

5 Can you complete the past participles? Use the irregular verbs list on pages 202–204 if necessary.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ hang / hung / <u>hung</u> | 4 blow / blew / | 8 light / lit / |
| 1 hide / hid / | 5 spill / spilt / | 9 tear / tore / |
| 2 throw / threw / | 6 shine / shone / | 10 lay / laid / |
| 3 shake / shook / | 7 bend / bent / | |

6 Cross out the wrong answer.

- ▶ He laid the *newspaper* / *books* / *juice* on the table.
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 I threw the <i>ball</i> / <i>book</i> / <i>horse</i> . | 5 She spilt some <i>juice</i> / <i>boxes</i> / <i>white coffee</i> on the floor. |
| 2 He hid behind the <i>cup</i> / <i>bed</i> / <i>wardrobe</i> . | 6 I shone a <i>light</i> / <i>torch</i> / <i>fire</i> on the documents. |
| 3 I bent the <i>spoon</i> / <i>pencil</i> / <i>key</i> . | 7 She shook the <i>carton of milk</i> / <i>bottle</i> / <i>wall</i> . |
| 4 I lit the <i>fire</i> / <i>cigarette</i> / <i>water</i> . | 8 He hung up his <i>scarf</i> / <i>gloves</i> / <i>jacket</i> . |

7 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form.


- ▶ Don't shake that bottle of fizzy water before you open it!
- The receptionist the guests into the restaurant.
 - Joanna has some tea on her dress, and it's left a mark.
 - Someone a candle so that we could see a bit more clearly.
 - I tried turning the key in the lock. It didn't work and I think I've the key.
 - He saw a soldier coming so he behind a wall.
 - The policemen stopped the man in the street and a torch into his bag.
 - I gave him the letter; he read it and then it into little pieces.
 - I went in quietly, took off my coat and it
 - The referee has his whistle, so it's the end of the game.
 - I the map on the ground so we could see exactly where we were going.

8 Make sure you know the meaning and irregular forms of the following verbs. Use the APP to help you and the irregular verb list on pages 202–204.

rise choose spread keep break bring feed



56 Verb + infinitive or -ing form

You will know many of these verbs, and others are explained in the glossary. If you need further help, use the Word List or the .

After some verbs we use an infinitive with **to**:

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------|--------|-------|---------|------|
| agree | attempt | forget | need | pretend | seem |
| afford | decide | hope | offer | promise | tend |
| arrange | expect | manage | plan | refuse | want |



He **attempted to climb** the north side of the mountain.
They **can't afford to buy** a new car.
I **tend to relax** in the evenings and watch TV.
She **pretended to feel** happy, but I knew she wasn't.

After some verbs we use an **-ing form**:

| | | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|---------------------------------|---------|
| admit | enjoy | give up | (not) mind | stop |
| avoid | fancy | imagine | practise | suggest |
| consider | finish | keep | risk ^{گروه آشنای دانش} | take up |



I **avoid going to the dentist** if possible.
I **took up swimming** to get fit.
I **gave up smoking** ten years ago.
I don't want to **risk losing** any money.
We **considered moving house**, but then decided to stay here.
Sara **doesn't mind sitting** in front of a computer all day.
I can't **imagine spending every day** in an office.
The boy **admitted stealing** the money.
Do you **fancy going out** this evening?

A few verbs can be followed by an infinitive or **-ing form** with a similar meaning:

| | | |
|-------|-------|----------|
| start | begin | continue |
|-------|-------|----------|

It started raining. = *It started to rain.*

Others can have slightly different meanings:

| | | |
|------|------|--------|
| like | love | prefer |
|------|------|--------|

I like swimming. (= I enjoy swimming.)

I like to do the housework in a particular order. (= it's my habit or preference)

SPOTLIGHT **keep**

When **keep** means to continue doing something or to repeat an action many times, it is followed by an **-ing form**.

- **Keep going** until you get to the station.
- **I keep losing** my pen.
- **He keeps coughing** at night.

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|---|
| attempt to do sth | try to do sth, often sth difficult | risk doing sth | put sth or yourself in danger |
| afford to do sth | If you can afford sth/to do sth , you have enough money for it. | consider doing sth | think about sth carefully |
| tend to do sth | usually do or be sth | not mind doing sth | not feel unhappy or angry about sth: <i>I don't mind getting up early.</i> |
| pretend to do sth | try to make sb believe sth that isn't true | imagine doing sth | make a picture of sth in your mind |
| refuse to do sth | say you will not do sth that sb has asked you to do | avoid doing sth | try not to do sth; stop sth happening |
| take up doing sth | start doing sth regularly, often as a hobby | admit doing sth | say that you have done sth wrong, or that sth bad is true |
| give up doing sth | stop doing or having sth. | fancy doing sth inf | want to do sth |

1 Put the verbs in the correct part of the table below.

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|
| ▶ hope ✓ avoid | give up like | imagine manage | agree keep | offer begin | prefer continue |
| + infinitive with to | + -ing form | infinitive OR -ing form | | | |
| ▶ hope ..... | ..... | ..... |  |  |  |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

2 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

- ▶ They *planned / ~~enjoyed~~ / refused / intended* to leave early.
- 1 She *fancied / avoided / kept / pretended* going to that particular restaurant.
 - 2 He *offered / admitted / agreed / arranged* to go to the bank with me.
 - 3 We *hope / tend / intend / consider* to go away in the summer.
 - 4 I don't *enjoy / mind / need / fancy* staying there.
 - 5 Did they *risk / intend / refuse / manage* to spend all the money?
 - 6 They both *gave up / considered / expected / took up* swimming.

3 Underline the correct verb.

- ▶ Sam fell off his bike, but he seems / agrees to be OK.
- 1 The roads will be busy so we *intend / pretend* to leave early.
 - 2 I don't *mind / take up* waiting for the children.
 - 3 He *managed / attempted* to find a room, but it was impossible.
 - 4 She *kept / gave up* getting a pain in her shoulder.
 - 5 Mark *refused / offered* to help me with the luggage, so I had to carry all of it.
 - 6 I *suggested / avoided* going there and they all agreed.
 - 7 It's a long trip, so I don't *hope / expect* to get there before midday.
 - 8 I love that motorbike, but I can't *mind / risk* spending all my savings on it.

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable infinitive or -ing form.

- ▶ I was very unfit so I took up jogging
- 1 I can't imagine in another country.
 - 2 My younger brother hopes very rich when he's older.
 - 3 My flatmates always avoid housework if they can.
 - 4 Some people hate it, but I don't mind to the dentist.
 - 5 Alexa promised me with my Greek classes this weekend.
 - 6 When I told him to do some work, he pretended asleep.

5 Complete the dialogues with a verb from page 118.

- ▶ Are you going shopping? ~ Yes, I want to buy a coat if I can find one.
- 1 Are you going to Brazil this year? ~ No, I can't to go now – it's too expensive.
 - 2 Do you going out for a meal? ~ Yeah, that's a great idea.
 - 3 Why did they to be German? ~ I don't know. It's obvious they were English.
 - 4 Do you eat dinner early in England? ~ Yes. We to eat earlier than people in Spain.
 - 5 Have you worked on a farm all your life? ~ Yes. I can't working in a factory.
 - 6 Are you moving house? ~ Yes, I'm to get a flat in the city centre.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Is there anything you:

- 1 managed to do recently that was difficult? What?
- 2 intended to do recently but didn't? What?
- 3 agreed to do recently? What?
- 4 refused to do recently? What?
- 5 forgot to do recently? What?
- 6 either took up or gave up recently? What?



We use **reflexive pronouns** when the object is the same person/thing as the subject. We often use them with certain verbs.

I cut myself using that knife. (NOT I cut me ...)

Why are you looking at yourself in the mirror?

He tried to kill himself. (Different from He tried to kill him. = another person)

I wanted to pay for everyone, but Jessica paid for herself.

That cat is always washing itself.

We enjoyed ourselves at the club last night.

You boys will hurt yourselves if you jump out of that tree.

Surprisingly, all the children behaved themselves during the trip.



SPOTLIGHT reflexive verbs

Some languages use reflexive verbs more than English. Be careful not to make these mistakes:

- I like to relax **myself/me**.
- I feel **myself/me** very tired.
- Where shall we meet **ourselves/us**?

The following verbs and expressions are also used with reflexive pronouns:

*If you're still hungry, just **help yourself** to more food. (= take what you want)*

*They're not in great health - they need to **take care of themselves**. (= look after themselves)*

*He's too emotional and he can't **control himself**. (= control his feelings)*

*I **taught myself** Italian. (= I worked alone without a teacher.)*

*It took her a few minutes to **calm herself (down)** after the argument. (= become quiet and relaxed)*

1 Complete the correct reflexive pronoun.

▶ I decided to help myself.

1 She taught _____.

2 I think they hurt _____.

3 He can't take care of _____.

4 I told you to behave _____.

5 I just helped _____ to more chicken.

6 Don't worry, we can take care of _____.

7 You all enjoyed _____, didn't you?

2 Complete each dialogue.

▶ How did you learn the piano? ~ I just taught myself.

1 Will you look after Sacha? ~ No, she's old enough to take _____ of herself.

2 There's blood here. ~ I know. Ben _____ himself using the bread knife.

3 Can I buy you a drink? ~ No, it's OK, I'll _____ for myself.

4 Have you _____ yourself? ~ Yes, I banged my leg on the table, and it's very painful.

5 Did Ben shout at you? ~ Yes, he gets angry very easily and just can't _____ himself.

6 Remember, this is a very formal dinner. ~ Don't worry, I'll _____ myself.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and reflexive pronoun.

▶ I go to parties, but I don't often really enjoy _____ myself.

1 I go to a language class because I don't think I'd be very good at _____.

2 When I go to a restaurant with someone, I usually like to _____ for _____.

3 If I want to _____ down, I usually sit quietly and breathe deeply.

4 I think I spend too much time _____ at _____ in the mirror.

5 In my country, more young men are _____ in recent years. Is life harder than it used to be?

6 In my country, young children don't always _____ in other people's houses.

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

120 Language focus: verbs

https://danesh.land/

The most common meaning of **take** is to move somebody or something to another place, or lead somebody to another place.

Take my coat – it's cold.

She took the girl's hand.

I took the money and left.

Marta took me to the station.

Take has many other meanings, and is often used in expressions with particular nouns:

| | |
|--|---|
| borrow or steal sth without permission | Someone has taken my phone. |
| eat or drink drugs/medicine | She has to take two tablets every day. |
| agree to have or accept sth | I took his advice and bought the larger tent. |
| do | My son takes his final exam tomorrow. |
| need an amount of time | It takes me an hour to get to work. |
| travel on | My brother takes the train to work. ALSO get the train |
| used with photo | We took lots of photos on holiday. (NOT make a photo) |
| eat/drink | Do you take milk and sugar in coffee? |
| wear (a particular size) | What size shoes do you take ? ~ 43. |



1 Underline the correct answer(s). Be careful: both answers are sometimes correct.

- ▶ I took / held his advice.
- 1 **Take** / Bring this book to the room next door.
- 2 Could you **take** / bring that book over here?
- 3 Don't forget to **take** / carry your books.
- 4 I'm **taking** / doing an exam tomorrow.
- 5 What size shoes do you **take** / use?
- 6 It **takes** / needs an hour to get there.
- 7 We can **take** / get the bus into town.
- 8 I want to **take** / make some photos.
- 9 I don't **take** / drink milk in tea or coffee.

2 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way using take.

- ▶ Have you got any pictures of your new flat? ~ Yes, I've taken lots of photos
- 1 Did you drive to the station? ~ No, I
- 2 Did you do what he suggested? ~ Yes, I
- 3 I'll have a coffee, please. ~ Fine. Do you
- 4 Is it easy to get to college? ~ Yeah, it only
- 5 What shall I do with these books? ~ Oh, could you
- 6 Your bag was here. Where is it? ~ Oh, I think my brother
- 7 Is this the medicine the doctor gave you? ~ Yes, I have to
- 8 Do the shoes fit you? ~ No, I

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. If possible, use take in your answers.

- ▶ How do you get to school/university/work? I take the bus or the underground
- 1 How long does it take?
- 2 Do you take milk and sugar in coffee?
- 3 What size shoes do you take?
- 4 What was the last exam that you did?
- 5 What pictures do you have on your phone?
- 6 What do you usually do if your parents advise you to do something?

TEST YOURSELF

A Art and artists



sculpture



portrait



landscape



still life



paintbrushes

Art galleries such as *The Louvre* have a huge collection of works of art, including sculptures and paintings, and sometimes hold special exhibitions of paintings by a particular artist, or from a particular period. These might be portraits, landscapes or still lifes, and in different styles, e.g. some abstract, some more realistic. Artists also use a range of techniques – painting with oil paints or other kinds of paint and using various types of paintbrushes, drawing, using computer images, etc. – to create different effects.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| collection | a group of similar things that sb has brought together. A person who does this as a hobby or a job is a collector . |
| work of art | a painting, a statue, etc. of a very high quality |
| exhibition | a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public: <i>The gallery is holding an exhibition of portraits by Rembrandt.</i> exhibit v |
| artist | sb who produces art (paintings, drawings, etc.) |
| period | a particular amount of time in history |
| abstract | (of art) not showing people or things as they really are; expressing an idea |
| range | different things of the same kind |
| technique | a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills |
| effect | a result or a change that happens because of sth |

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ effect

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 collection | 4 period | 7 portrait | 10 sculpture |
| 2 abstract | 5 paintbrush | 8 exhibit | 11 technique |
| 3 artist | 6 landscape | 9 collector | 12 exhibition |

2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Somebody who produces paintings is an artist.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 A painting of a person is a | 6 A person who buys lots of paintings is a |
| 2 A painting of the countryside is a | 7 A very good painting is often called a |
| 3 A painting of fruit, flowers or objects is a | 8 Artists often use a and oil paints. |
| 4 The wood or metal around a painting is the | 9 A painting that is not realistic in style is described as |
| 5 A number of paintings shown in public is an | 10 A particular way of doing something, often needing special skills, is a |

3 Complete the words in the text.

Pablo Picasso is a great ▶ artist who produced paintings and (1) s in a (2) r of different styles and over a very long (3) p In his early work, his paintings were more realistic and easier to understand. For example, there is a wonderful (4) p of his mother that he painted when he was only 15. He also painted (5) l in that period. Throughout his life he produced many (6) s life paintings, which became more (7) a as he experimented with different styles and (8) t Many people believe that his greatest (9) w of art was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. It is a huge painting, which contains very powerful images and symbols of war, and it has had an enormous (10) e on people around the world. In the past, the painting was (11) e in various countries, but it returned to Spain in 1981, and is now part of a permanent (12) c in the Museo Reina Sofia in Madrid.



B Reactions to art



I **remember** seeing an exhibition of photographs a few years ago about the way war has affected my city, Bath. It was very **powerful** and made me more aware of the **reality** of war – the **images** of **destruction** were of places I know well. One of the photographs **moved me to tears**.



A painting that **cheers me up** is *Sunflowers* by Vincent Van Gogh. The flower is a **symbol** of **happiness**, and it was painted at a time when Van Gogh was feeling **optimistic** about the future. He painted the flowers many times, but one of the **original** paintings is in the National Gallery in London where I often go and look at it.

SPOTLIGHT *remember doing something and remember to do something*

If you **remember doing something**, you have an image in your memory of something that happened in the past. If you **remember to do something**, you do something that you have to do and don't forget about it.

- I **remember reading** the book about ten years ago.
- I must **remember to read** Jonah's email when I get home.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| reaction (to sb/sth) | sth that you do or say because of sth that has happened react (to sb/sth) v |
| powerful | having a strong effect on your mind or body |
| reality | 1 a thing that is actually experienced, not just imagined 2 the way life really is, not the way it may appear to be or you would like it to be |
| image | a picture or description that appears in a book, film or painting |
| destruction | the act of damaging sth so badly that it can no longer be used or no longer exists destroy v |
| move | cause sb to have strong feelings, especially of sadness move sb to tears made sb cry |
| cheer (sb) up | become happier, or make sb happier |
| symbol (of sth) | a person, sign, object, etc. which represents sth |
| happiness | the feeling of being happy |
| optimistic | expecting good things to happen or sth to be successful |
| original | painted, written, etc. by the artist rather than copied original n |

4 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- | | | |
|--|-------|---|
| ▶ War causes terrible | ..... | a to tears. |
| 1 The rose is a | ..... | b going to the Walker Gallery last year? |
| 2 Did you remember | ..... | c the reality of his illness. |
| 3 Da Vinci's drawings had a powerful | ..... | d symbol of love. |
| 4 The painting of the children moved me | ..... | e to buy the tickets this morning? |
| 5 Do you remember | ..... | f destruction. ✓ |
| 6 I'm beginning to accept | ..... | g cheered me up. |
| 7 The bright colours in the painting | ..... | h effect on me. |

5 Complete the dialogues.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ Was there a lot of damage in the gallery fire? | ~ Yes, a lot of paintings were <u>destroyed</u> . |
| 1 Did the exhibition have an effect on you? | ~ Yes, it really me. |
| 2 Was that a real Picasso or a copy? | ~ It was an painting and worth a lot. |
| 3 <i>The Death of Marat</i> is very a powerful painting. | ~ Yes, it's a strong of death. |
| 4 Are you feeling positive about the future? | ~ Yes, I'm that things will get better. |
| 5 Do you know Analisa's sister? | ~ Yes, I meeting her a few years ago. |
| 6 Did the portrait express sadness? | ~ No, not at all – in fact, it expressed great |
| 7 Did you accuse the man of stealing? | ~ Yes, he very badly and shouted at me. |
| 8 Was the flood very serious? | ~ Yes, it caused the of the main bridge. |

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ Is there a painting that brings you happiness? If so, which one? Yes, a painting of a dog. It looks so happy.
- 1** Is there a painting that moves you to tears? Which one, and why?
- 2** What is your reaction to abstract art?
- 3** Are there any paintings or artists that cheer you up? Which ones?
- 4** Have you got any original paintings? If so, what are they?

TEST YOURSELF

Kathryn Bigelow has been a director, **producer** and **screenwriter** for over forty years. Since 1981, she has made many films in the action film **genre**, often **influenced** by Alfred Hitchcock. In 1987 she made *Near Dark*, which **combines** elements of the western and horror film genres, and the thriller *Point Break* in 1991. It wasn't until 2010, though, that she **achieved** greater **fame**, when she became the first woman to receive an Academy **award** for Best Director for *The Hurt Locker*. However, she has always refused to be called a 'woman **film-maker**'. She has also divided **critics**: some love her films, while others feel the **content** is too violent.



Kathryn Bigelow

GLOSSARY

| | | | |
|---------------------|--|-------------------|---|
| producer | sb who is in charge of the practical and financial aspects of making a film | combine | join two or more things together to form a single one combination <i>n</i> |
| screenwriter | a person who writes the <i>screenplay</i> for a film: the written words that actors speak, the <i>script</i> ; and the instructions for how it is to be filmed and acted | fame | the state of being famous: achieve/win fame |
| genre | a particular type of film, art, music, etc. that you can recognise because of its special features | award | a prize or money that you give to sb who has done sth very well: <i>She won the award for best actress.</i> |
| influence | change the way that sb thinks influence <i>n</i> | film-maker | a person who makes films |
| | | critic | a person who writes about a film, book or play, and says what they think about it |
| | | content | the subject matter of a film, play, book, etc. |

SPOTLIGHT *cinema*

A **cinema** [C] is the building where you go to see a film.

■ *What's on at the **cinema** this weekend?*

Cinema [U] means films in general; the film industry.

■ *the history of French **cinema***

■ *Alfonso Cuarón is a leading figure in Mexican **cinema**.*

1 Is the word stress the same or different in the pairs of words? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you.

Practise saying the words.

▶ achieve / critic

D

1 critic / award

.....

2 film-maker / screenwriter

.....

3 influence / cinema

.....

4 combine / genre

.....

5 content *n* / screenplay

.....

2 Tick the words which describe people.

▶ film-maker

award

genre

critic

screenwriter

script

influence

producer

screenplay

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ I don't go to the cinema very often in summer; I prefer being outdoors.

1 In Brazil, the most popular of films is action films.

2 Hugh Grant had been acting for years before he achieved in *Four Weddings and a Funeral*.

3 I liked the film, but a lot of said it was much too long.

4 I think Almodóvar has young film directors all over the world.

5 *Green Book* won the for Best Film at the Oscars in 2019.

6 The acting was good, but I didn't like the of the film – it was all about war.

7 A romantic comedy is a of humour and a love story.

8 Do you know very much about Russian ?

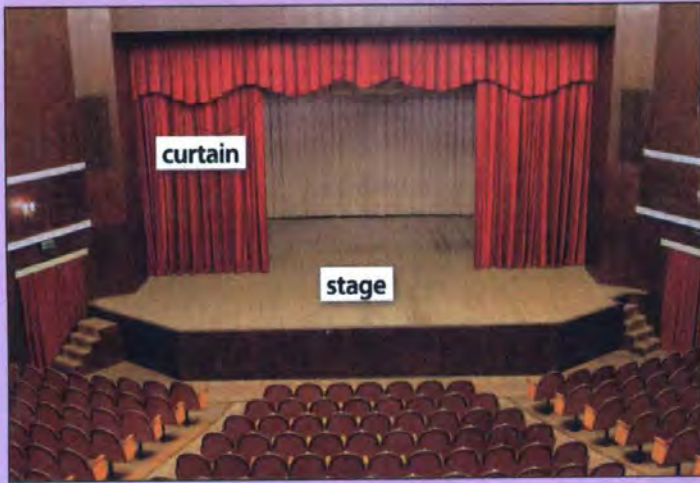
9 The film wonderful scenery with gentle music.

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write about your favourite film, or a film you've seen recently. Give as much detail as possible. Was it popular with the critics? Did it win any awards?



TEST YOURSELF

61 Theatre



A friend of mine, Sam, runs an **amateur drama** group. They **put on** three or four **plays** a year in a small **local theatre**. Sam directs all of them, sometimes takes a **leading role** and even writes some of the plays they perform as well. I don't do much **acting** myself, but I once played a **servant** in a comedy. Most of the time I help with **costume** and **stage design**, but sometimes I have a small role in one of the plays. We have a lot of fun.

GLOSSARY

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| amateur | doing an activity because you enjoy it, and not for money or as part of a job amateur n ; OPP professional |
| drama | plays, often serious, in a theatre or on television |
| put sth on play | prepare a play for people to see a story that you watch in the theatre or on television |
| local | of a place near you |
| theatre [C] | a building where you go to see plays; [U] plays as a form of entertainment: <i>I like theatre.</i> |
| leading role | most important a person's part in a play or film: <i>a leading role</i> |
| acting servant | the art of performing in plays act v sb who works in another person's house and cooks, cleans, etc. |
| costume [C, U] | the special clothes that people wear, e.g. in a play or a film |
| stage | the place in a theatre or concert hall where actors, musicians, etc. perform: stage design (= how the stage looks for the audience) |

1 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ A play usually has a story / game.
- 1 A theatre which is near where you live is a **local** / **amateur** theatre.
- 2 The most important actor plays the **leading role** / **drama**.
- 3 If someone is an **amateur** / a **professional**, they are paid for their work.
- 4 The actors stand on the **stage** / **curtain**.
- 5 You **wear** / **use** a costume in a play.
- 6 A role is a **type of play** / **part in a play**.

2 Cover the text at the top of the page, then correct these sentences.

- ▶ The group puts on two plays a year. The group puts on three or four plays a year.
- 1 They put their plays on in a large national theatre.
- 2 It's a professional group.
- 3 It's a film group.
- 4 Sam writes all the plays.
- 5 I always act in the plays.
- 6 I once played a nurse in a comedy.
- 7 I help with costume and selling tickets.
- 8 I take a leading role in the plays.

3 Complete these sentences about plays.

- ▶ I went to the theatre to see *Hamlet*.
- 1 A is performed by actors.
- 2 Each of these people perform a in the play.
- 3 A play is performed on a
- 4 The actors often wear special
- 5 The most important actor plays the role.
- 6 At the beginning of the play the goes up.
- 7 Plays for the theatre, radio or TV can also be called

TEST YOURSELF

A Instruments and musicians



bass guitar



trumpet



saxophone



drums



orchestra

conductor



cello



keyboard



organ



record



language

lead singer

SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-ist*

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. **cellist**, **saxophonist**, **organist**, **guitarist**, **violinist**, **pianist**. However, we say **trumpeter** and **drummer**, and for some instruments, we use the word **player**, e.g. **keyboard player**.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|
| ▶ trumpet / drums | S | 4 guitarist / violinist | ..... |
| 1 orchestra / keyboard | ..... | 5 saxophone / cello | ..... |
| 2 conductor / cello | ..... | 6 bass guitar / player | ..... |
| 3 lead singer / keyboard | ..... | 7 conductor / orchestra | ..... |

- 2 Complete the musical instruments and the person who plays them.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ▶ vi <u>o</u> li <u>n</u> / violinist | 4 dr..... / |
| 1 or..... / | 5 sax..... / |
| 2 tr..... / | 6 b..... gu..... / |
| 3 ce..... / | 7 key..... / |

- 3 Can you complete these sentences about famous people in music?

MUSIC AND MUSICIANS QUIZ

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ Yehudi Menuhin was a famous <u>violinist</u> . | 6 Miles Davis played |
| 1 Freddie Mercury was singer for | 7 Yo Yo Ma is a great |
| 2 Keith Richards is lead for the | 8 Bill Wyman played guitar for the |
| 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous | 9 Benny Andersson wrote, sang and played for ABBA. |
| 4 Ringo Starr played for the | 10 Louis Armstrong, one of the jazz world's great and singers, made his first in 1925. |
| 5 John Coltrane played | |



B A famous rock star

Why is David Bowie so **well known** and widely **admired**? Firstly, because he was a fine musician and **songwriter** who **toured** the world for over 30 years, but also because **fans** loved the incredible **visual impact** of his **live** performances. They may be surprised to know that he was strongly influenced by classical music, especially the **composer** Stravinsky: his first album in 1967 used many orchestral instruments. **Sadly**, Bowie died in January, 2016, but his final **recording**, his 25th album in total called Blackstar, was **released** just two days earlier.



GLOSSARY

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| well known | famous: a well-known guitarist |
| admire | like sb and think they have achieved a lot |
| songwriter | sb who writes songs |
| tour | travel around a place, e.g. to perform, on holiday |
| fan | a person who likes sb or sth, e.g. a singer or a sport |
| visual | connected with seeing |
| impact | the effect that sth has: make an impact |
| composer | a person who writes music, especially classical music, e.g. opera, symphony compose v |
| sadly | unfortunately |
| recording | sounds or pictures on a tape, CD or film |
| release | put an album, CD, DVD, film, etc. onto the market so people can buy it release n |

SPOTLIGHT *live, alive, living*

Live (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

■ We saw the band play **live**, then watched it on TV a couple of days later.

Living and **alive** mean not dead. **Alive** is not used before a noun.

■ He's one of the greatest **living** pianists. (NOT **alive** pianists)

■ Mozart isn't **alive** today.

4 Yes or No?

▶ Is Elvis Presley **alive**?

1 If you are a **fan** of someone, do you like them?

2 If you see someone play **live**, are you there in the audience?

3 If something is **visual**, do you hear it?

4 If somebody **releases** an album, can you buy it?

No

5 If somebody is **well known**, are they famous?

6 If somebody **admires** you, do they dislike you?

7 If a performer **is touring**, does he play live music?

8 If you listen to a **recording**, is it live?

9 Is a **living** artist still **alive**?

10 Do **composers** write music?

5 Complete the words in the texts.

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most talented ▶ **songwriters**. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was influenced by the bossa nova style of Joao Gilberto, but he didn't (1) r..... his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled widely in the 1970s, becoming very (2) w..... known, and then he made a big (3) i..... back in Brazil in 1980 when he introduced reggae to the Brazilian people with his (4) r..... of the Bob Marley song *No woman, no cry*. His (5) f..... love his music for the rhythms and melodies, but he is also (6) a..... outside of music for his work in politics and for social causes.

I'm still a great (7) f..... of Prince. He was a wonderful singer and (8) s....., and I was lucky enough to see him (9) l..... on two occasions when he was (10) t..... in Europe. His performances made a huge (11) i..... on me, not just because of the music, but also because he was such a (12) v..... performer with his clothing and dancing. He had great success with albums such as *Purple Rain* and *Sign 'O' the Times*, and he was a major (13) i..... on many other performers. I wish he was still (14) a..... today making music, but (15) s....., he died when he was only 57.



63 TV and online viewing

A TV (Television) programmes

| Channel 5 | |
|-------------|---|
| 7.00–7.30 | early evening news with newsreader Gemma Matheson |
| 7.30–8.00 | <i>The Eldersons</i> – soap opera |
| 8.00–9.00 | documentary : <i>Where does all the rubbish go?</i> |
| 9.00–10.00 | <i>Having a Laugh</i> : game show with host Arlo Walsh |
| 10.00–10.40 | episode 1 of the new Icelandic drama series <i>The Blackwood Lake</i> |
| 10.40–11.30 | talk show with host Tanya Kaye and guests |
| 11.30–1.20 | film: <i>The Lost Continent</i> |

GLOSSARY

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| channel | a TV station |
| newsreader | a person who reads the news on TV, radio, etc. |
| soap opera | a story about the lives of a group of people that is on TV or radio every day or several times a week: ALSO soap : <i>I don't watch soaps.</i> |
| documentary | a film or TV programme that gives facts about sth |
| game show | a TV programme in which people play games or answer questions to win prizes |
| host | a person who introduces a TV or radio programme, and talks to guests |
| episode | one part of a TV or radio story that is shown or told in different parts |
| drama series | a number of programmes on TV or radio which have the same main characters and each tell a complete story |
| talk show | a TV programme where famous people are invited to talk about themselves SYN chat show |
| guest | a person who is invited to a special event, e.g. a talk show, a party |

1 Find the end of each word or compound noun.

drama / channel talk show documentary host guests soap opera series episode chat show

2 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|-----------|
| ▶ special | c | a opera |
| 1 drama | ..... | b Four |
| 2 chat | ..... | c guest ✓ |
| 3 news | ..... | d series |
| 4 soap | ..... | e reader |
| 5 Channel | ..... | f show |

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Most soap operas are on during the early evening.
- They're showing the first of a new drama series tonight.
 - I don't like that show where young women try to find boyfriends.
 - The thing is, shows are only interesting if the are interesting.
 - Which is that new game show on? ~ ITV, I think.
 - I don't like, but my grandmother watches them every evening – never misses one.
 - There have been more female chat show in the last fifteen years, which is good.
 - I loved that series about the Swedish detective called Saga.
 - I saw a wonderful about the strong social relationships that form between elephants.

4 **ABOUT YOU** What do you think of these programmes? Do you often watch them? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

soap operas documentaries the news game shows chat shows drama series



TEST YOURSELF